International Course on Conservation of Japanese Paper 2019

TOKYO NATIONAL RESEARCH INSTITUTE FOR CULTURAL PROPERTIES

国際研修「紙の保存と修復」2019

東京文化財研究所

International Course on Conservation Japanese Paper 2019

国際研修「紙の保存と修復」2019

Preface

Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties has conducted international courses on the conservation of cultural properties with traditional materials and techniques, such as paintings, calligraphy, urushi objects, and textiles. Based on the results of many years of research, this is the report of the lectures and practical training program conducted in the International Course on "Conservation of Japanese Paper" held from September 9 to 27, 2019.

This course has been jointly organized by the Institute and the International Centre for the Study of the Preservation and Restoration of Cultural Property (ICCROM) since 1992. The course aims to contribute to the protection of cultural property outside Japan by disseminating Japanese knowledge and techniques of the conservation and restoration of paper cultural property to participants from around the world. This year, ten specialists in conservation from ten countries were selected as participants among 71 applications from 33 countries. In addition to the lectures about the protection systems of both tangible and intangible cultural property in Japan, basic insights into the Japanese paper, traditional conservation materials, and tools, the course included the practical sessions that were led by instructors from a certified group holding the nationally recognized title of the Selected Conservation Techniques on "Restoration techniques for mounts." The participants had an experience of the restoration work of paper cultural property, from the cleaning to the mounting into a handscroll. Japanese-style bookbinding, and handling of folding screens and hanging scrolls were also included in the sessions. The excursion to the cities of Nagoya, Mino, and Kyoto, which was arranged in the middle of the course, offered the participants an opportunity to see folding screens and sliding doors used in historic buildings, the Japanese papermaking process which is designated as an Important Intangible Cultural Property of Japan (*Hon-minoshi*), a traditional restoration studio, and so forth. On the last day, availability and the usage of washi in each country, and the application of Japanese traditional techniques to other countries were discussed.

While interest in and demand for the restoration techniques using Japanese hand-made paper are increasing both in Japan and abroad, opportunities to acquire related knowledge and techniques are still insufficient. We hope that our course will contribute to the promotion of understanding about such intangible cultural properties of Japan as its restoration techniques, as well as to the protection of tangible cultural properties like Japanese art objects made of paper in overseas collections. It would be grateful if this publication helps.

Lastly, I wish to express my heartfelt gratitude to all the people and institutions who contributed to implementation of the course.

TOMODA Masahiko

Director, Japan Center for International Cooperation in Conservation

Tokyo National research Institute for Cultural Properties

刊行にあたって

東京文化財研究所 文化遺産国際協力センター長 友田 正彦

東京文化財研究所では、永年の調査・研究成果に基づき、日本の伝統的な材料と技術を用いた、書画・漆工品・染織品文化財の保存と修復に関する国際研修を行っています。本報告書には、令和元年9月9日から27日にかけてICCROM(文化財保存修復研究国際センター)と共催した国際研修「紙の保存と修復」において実施された講義と実習の記録を掲載しています。

本研修は平成4年より開催しており、海外からの参加者へ紙本文化財の保存と修復に関する日本の知識や技術を伝えることを通じて、各国における文化財の保護に貢献することを目指しています。本年は33か国71名の応募の中から選ばれた10か国10名の文化財保存修復専門家が参加しました。日本の文化財保護制度や和紙の基礎的な知識、伝統的な修復材料や道具に関する講義に加え、国の選定保存技術「装潢修理技術」保持認定団体の技術者を講師に迎え、紙本文化財を巻子に仕立てるまでの修理作業を中心に、和綴じ冊子の作製や屏風と掛軸の取り扱いについての実習を行いました。研修中盤には名古屋、美濃、京都を訪問し、歴史的建造物の室内における屏風や襖、国の重要無形文化財である本美濃紙の製造工程や伝統的技術を用いた修復の現場などを見学しました。そして、最終日の討論会では各国における和紙の利用・入手状況や日本の伝統技術の各国への応用などについて活発な議論が交わされました。

和紙を用いた修復技術等に対する国内外の専門家の関心と需要が高まる中で、海外における日本の文化財の保存修復の知識と技術を知る機会は充分ではありません。この様な国際研修を行うことにより、海外に所在する日本の書画等の有形文化財の保護に寄与すると同時に、伝統的修復技術のような日本の無形文化財に対しても理解が一層促進されることを期待しています。また、本報告書が、その一助となれば幸いです。

末筆になりますが、本事業の実施にあたってご尽力いただきました各位ならびに関係機関に対し、心より 御礼申し上げます。

CONTENTS

目 次

Prefa	ice 刊行にあたって	TOM	ODA Masahiko	
		友田	正彦	
1 (Overview 概要			
1	Basic Information of the Course			
	研修の基礎情報			
2	Course Schedule			
	研修日程			
3	List of Participants			
	参加者一覧			
	Lectures 講義			
1	Paper Conservation in Japan	KATO	O Masato	1
	日本の文化財保護と装潢修理技術	加藤	雅人	
2	On Adhesives Used in the Restoration of Japanese Paintings	HAYA	AKAWA Noriko	2
	日本画修復に使われる接着剤について	早川	典子	
3	Paper Basics	KATO	O Masato	3
	紙の基礎	加藤	雅人	
4	Protection of Craft Techniques in Japan: Present Condition and			
	Transitions	KIKU	JCHI Riyo	5
	日本における工芸技術保護の現状と変遷	菊池	理予	
5	Brushes	TANA	AKA Shigemi,	6
	刷毛	TANA	AKA Kohei	
		田中	重己、田中宏平	
III I	Practical Work 実習			
1	Schedule			8
	実習日程			
2	Processes		ASE Atsuko,	8
	工程	OGA 高瀬	SAWARA Atsushi 亜津子、小笠原 温	
3	Handling Hanging Scrolls and Folding Screens	IKEI	OA Kazuhiko	12
	掛軸と屏風の取り扱い	池田	和彦	

IV S	Study Tour スタディーツアー	
1	Schedule日程	138
2	Visiting Places	139
V S	Summary まとめ	
1	Discussion ディスカッション	144
2	Summary of the Results of the Questionnaireアンケート結果	166
3	Glossary用語集	170

		1	Overview

1 Basic Information of the Course 研修の基礎情報

[ORGANIZERS]	Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties (TNRICP) International Centre for the Study of the Preservation and Restoration of
	Cultural Property (ICCROM)
[DATES]	9 - 27 September 2019
	(Study tour: 16 - 20 September 2019)
[PLACES]	Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties
	(Study tour: Nagoya, Mino and Kyoto)
[PARTICIPANTS]	10 participants from 10 countries
[WORKING	
LANGUAGES]	English
[COURSE]	Japanese paper is internationally recognised as a superior conservation material. However, outside of Japan, it is difficult to systematically gain holistic knowledge and experience of Japanese paper and Japanese traditional technique. In this course, better understanding of a tradition of conservation in Japan will be offered to the participants overseas. In addition, the course aims at providing opportunities to build bridges between the Japanese and the Western paper conservation and to employ Japanese conservation approaches, materials and techniques to non-Japanese cultural heritages as well.
【COURSE METHODOLOGY】	The course is an intensive program combining theory and practice, through lectures, practical workshops in Tokyo and a study tour to visit traditional papermaking masters and mounting studios.

【主催】	東京文化財研究所 (TNRICP)
	文化財保存修復研究国際センター (ICCROM)
【研修期間】	2019 年 9 月 9 日 ~ 9 月 27 日
	(スタディーツアー: 2019 年 9 月 16 日 ~ 9 月 20 日)
【研修場所】	東京文化財研究所
	(スタディーツアー:名古屋市、岐阜県美濃市、京都市)
【参加者】	10カ国 10名
【使用言語】	英語
【開催趣旨】	文化財修復材料として和紙が優良と国際的に認知されている。一方で、 海外では和紙や和紙を使用した修復技術についての正しい知識、経験 を体系的に得ることは困難である。本研修では海外から参加者を募り、 技術移転を行うとともに日本の保存修復文化の理解に努める。さらに、 日本と欧米の紙文化財保存修復の架け橋となり、日本的な取り組み法、 材料、技術を欧米の文化財保存修復へ役立てることも目的としている。
【研修内容】	講義:材料学(紙、糊)、日本における紙の保存修復 ほか 実技:巻子修復、冊子綴じ、掛軸・屏風取り扱い スタディーツアー:和紙工房見学、手漉き体験、修復材料・道具店見学 ほか

2 Course Schedule 研修日程

Date	Time	Subjects	Lecturer
	10:00–10:30	Opening ceremony	
Mon.	10:30–11:00	Orientation	
9 th Sep.	11:00–12:00	Lecture "Paper Conservation in Japan"	KATO Masato
9" Sep.	13:30–16:30	Self-introduction	
	17:00–19:00	Reception	
T	09:30–12:00	Lecture "On Adhesives Used in the Restoration of Japanese Paintings"	HAYAKAWA Noriko
Tue.	13:00–15:00		The Association for Conservation of
10 th Sep.	15:15–17:15	Practical work	National Treasures (ACNT)
Wod	09:30–12:00	Lecture "Paper Basics"	KATO Masato
Wed.	13:00–15:00	Described words	ACNIT
11 th Sep.	15:15–17:15	- Practical work	ACNT
- .	09:30–12:00		
Thur.	13:00–15:00	Practical work	ACNT
12 th Sep.	15:15–17:15		
	09:30–12:00		4.01/17
Fri.	13:00–15:00	Practical work	ACNT
13 th Sep.	15:15–17:15	Tour of Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties	
Mon. 16 th -	- Fri. 20 th Sep.	Study tour (Nagoya, Mino and Kyoto)	
	09:30–12:00		
Mon.	13:00–15:00	Practical work	ACNT
23 rd Sep.	15:15–17:15		
Tue.	09:30–12:00	Lecture "Protection of Craft Techniques in Japan: present condition and transitions"	KIKUCHI Riyo
24 th Sep.	13:00–15:00	Dractical work	ACNT
·	15:15–17:15	Practical work	ACNT
	09:30–12:00	Practical work	
Wed.	13:00–15:00	Practical work: Handling of hanging scrolls	ACNT
25 th Sep.	15:15–17:15	and folding screens	
Thur.	09:30–12:00	Lecture "Brushes"	TANAKA Shigemi and TANAKA Kohei
26 th Sep.	13:00–15:00	B # 1 1	ACNIT
	15:15–17:15	Practical work	ACNT
Fri.	09:00–11:30	Discussion and questionnaire	
27 th Sep.	11:40–12:00	Closing ceremony	

日付	時間	内容	講師
	10:00-10:30	開講式	
	10:30-11:00	オリエンテーション	
9月9日 (月)	11:00-12:00	講義「日本の文化財保護と装潢修理技術」	加藤 雅人
(Д)	13:30-16:30	参加者自己紹介	
	17:00 — 19:00	レセプション	
9月10日	09:30-12:00	講義「日本画修復に使われる接着剤について」	早川 典子
(火)	13:00-15:00	- 実習	国宝修理装潢師
()	15:15-17:15	大百 	連盟
9月11日	09:30-12:00	講義「紙の基礎」	加藤 雅人
(水)	13:00-15:00	- 実習	国宝修理装潢師
()]()	15:15-17:15	⊼ 目	連盟
9月12日	09:30-12:00		国宝修理装潢師
(木)	13:00-15:00	実習	連盟
(7)(7)	15:15—17:15		/生皿
9月13日	09:30-12:00	- 実習	国宝修理装潢師
(金)	13:00-15:00	7 1	連盟
<u> </u>	15:15-17:15	東京文化財研究所 所内見学	
9月16日(月) ~ 20日(金)		スタディーツアー	
	09:30-12:00		
9月23日	13:00-15:00	実習	国宝修理装潢師
(月・祝)	15:15—17:15		連盟
	09:30-12:00	講義「日本における工芸技術保護の現状と変遷」	菊池 理予
9月24日	13:00-15:00		国宝修理装潢師
(火)	15:15-17:15	- 実習	連盟
	09:30-12:00	実習	
9月25日	13:00-15:00		国宝修理装潢師
(水)	15:15-17:15	実習:屏風・掛軸の取り扱い	連盟
9月26日	09:30-12:00	講義「刷毛」	田中 重己、田中 宏平
(木)	13:00-15:00	C+ 333	国宝修理装潢師
	15:15—17:15	- 実習	連盟
9月27日	09:30-11:30	ディスカッション、アンケート	
(金)	11:40-12:00	閉講式	

3 List of Participants 参加者一覧

Participants

研修生

Aranzazu BLAT BURGUES	Museum of Islamic Art - Qatar Museums	QATAR*
Maria BORYSENKO	The National Conservation Area "St. Sophia of Kyiv"	UKRAINE*
Claudia GIOSTRELLA	Ministry for Cultural Heritage and Activities, Superintendence of Archeology, Fine Arts and Landscape for the provinces of Pisa e Livorno	ITALY
Rosaleen HILL	Queen's University	CANADA
Lindsey HOBBS	New York City Municipal Archives	USA
Kate HUGHES	State Library of New South Wales	AUSTRALIA
Yuyang LIU	Preservation and Conservation Centre, The University of Hong Kong Libraries	CHINA
Clodagh NELIGAN	The Library of Trinity College Dublin	IRELAND
Matthias SOTIRAS	The British Museum	UK
Kristina VIRRO	University of Tartu Library	ESTONIA

 $^{^{\}star}$ The countries which are the first time to attend the JPC course

Lecturers

講師

HAYAKAWA Noriko	Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties
早川 典子	東京文化財研究所
IKEDA Kazuhiko 池田 和彦	The Association for Conservation of National Treasures 国宝修理装潢師連盟
KATO Masato	Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties
加藤 雅人	東京文化財研究所
KIKUCHI Riyo	Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties
菊池 理予	東京文化財研究所
OGASAWARA Atsushi 小笠原 温	The Association for Conservation of National Treasures 国宝修理装潢師連盟
TAKASE Atsuko 高瀬 亜津子	The Association for Conservation of National Treasures 国宝修理装潢師連盟
TANAKA Kohei	KOBAYASHI Brush Shop
田中 宏平	小林刷毛製造所
TANAKA Shigemi	KOBAYASHI Brush Shop
田中 重己	小林刷毛製造所

Interpreters

通訳

AOKI Atsuko	Yesterday Today and Tomorrow
青木 敦子	有限会社イエスタデイ・トゥデイ・アンド・トゥモロウ
MATSUBARA Michiko	Yesterday Today and Tomorrow
松原 美智子	有限会社イエスタデイ・トゥデイ・アンド・トゥモロウ

Organizers

主催者スタッフ

Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties 東京文化財研究所

KATO Masato	Head of Conservation Practice Section,
加藤 雅人	Japan Center for International Cooperation in Conservation,
加膝 准入	文化遺産国際協力センター 技術支援研究室長
GOTO Rika	Associate Fellow,
	Japan Center for International Cooperation in Conservation
後藤 里架 	文化遺産国際協力センター アソシエイトフェロー
GOKITA Makiha	Associate Fellow,
	Japan Center for International Cooperation in Conservation
五木田 まきは 	文化遺産国際協力センター アソシエイトフェロー
ODA Momoko	Associate Fellow,
	Japan Center for International Cooperation in Conservation
小田 桃子 	文化遺産国際協力センター アソシエイトフェロー
HORI Manami	Associate Fellow,
MORI Manailli 堀 まなみ	Japan Center for International Cooperation in Conservation
堀 まなか	文化遺産国際協力センター アソシエイトフェロー

ICCROM 文化財保存修復研究国際センター

José Luiz PEDERSOLI Jr.	Unit Manager, Strategic Planning Strategic Planning Unit
-------------------------	--

		1	Lectures

1 Paper Conservation in Japan 日本の文化財保護と装潢修理技術

Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties KATO Masato

In this article, we will discuss the conservation of cultural properties, especially that of paper, in Japan. We will be going over the systems of conservation of cultural properties in Japan to give you an idea about Japanese principles. This will help you understand the basic framework in which conservators, that you will be working with from tomorrow.

First, we will discuss the laws in Japan. We have a law called, "Law for the Protection of Cultural Properties," which was enacted in 1950. As you are aware, in Japan, there are cultural properties that are thousands of years old. Thus, there has been a strong sense of protection and conservation of such historic heritage. However, the western concept of "cultural property" or "museum" was introduced in Japan only at the end of the 19th century. Until then, Japanese cultural properties were stored privately in individual households or historic shrines or temples, and were treated as private treasures.

In 1896, "The law for the preservation of all shrines and temples" was enacted. The social movement around this period tried to abolish Buddhism and promote Shintoism in Japan. The movement reflected on the historical changes in Japan wherein the Samurai warriors' rule was replaced by sovereignty of the emperors. During this period, several Buddhist temples were destroyed. The aforementioned law was enacted to protect the temples from this destruction,

In addition to architectural structures like shrines and temples, paintings and Buddhist statues have also become subjects of protection for the Japanese government. Japan's rapid westernization was the primary reason for the enactment of this law. This is because owing to their popularity overseas, many 東京文化財研究所

加藤 雅人

この講義では、日本の紙文化財の保護の制度というものを、お話ししていきます。まず最初に、われわれ日本人がどういう考えを持って文化財の保護にあたっているかということを分かってもらいたいと思います。もう一つ、明日から実習が始まりますが、その実習で学ぶ技術、どういう根拠でその人たちが教えているかということを、今回の講義で分かっていただけると思います。

まず、日本の国の法律の話をします。現在、日本の文化財を守るための法律がありますが、これは 1950 年に施行されたものです。それまでは文化財保護してなかったのかというと、そうではありません。ご存じのとおり、日本には 1000 年以上前の文化財も残っているほどですので、残った物を守るという意識はありました。しかし実際のところ、文化財や博物館という概念は西洋で生まれて日本に入ってきたもので、19世紀末になるまでは、日本にはそういった概念はなく、個人やお寺のお宝物という感じでした。

最初にできた法律が 1896 年の古社寺保存法です。これは、実は国内で、廃仏毀釈、仏教をやめて神道に戻りましょうという動きがあり、これは侍の時代から天皇中心の時代へという社会的な運動の中で、お寺がたくさん壊されました。壊されてしまうお寺を守ろうということでつくられました。



Fig. 1 Lecture 講義

Japanese began to sell their cultural artifacts during this period. Thus, the law was enacted to stop the outflow of Japanese artworks.

The next step toward the conservation of the cultural properties in Japan was the 1950 law, enacted after the end of World War II. The war led to the destruction and damage of many cultural artifacts in Japan. Facing defeat in the war, impoverished Japanese people began to sell a large number of their cultural artifacts overseas. The government and intellectuals in Japan started working together to devise preventive measures to curb the outflow of such artifacts. However, until 1950, Japan was occupied by the Allied Forces who did not allow the Japanese to enact such laws.

However, Japanese government prompted the promotion of the protection of cultural properties owing to a fire at the "Horyuji" temple that caused the destruction of a mural painting, which was a national treasure. The loss of this mural also prompted the Japanese public to realize that something needed to be done for the protection of such cultural properties. With public support, the law for the protection of cultural properties came into being in 1950.

This year, 1949, when the fire broke out, is an important one for people like us, who are involved in the protection of cultural properties, because the fire broke out during the conservation process at the site. To keep a very precise record of the mural painting, detailed sketches were needed and the people involved were using electric blankets for the job. However, they left these blankets on after they left the workplace, resulting in the fire. Thus, the date is now designated as the Fire Prevention Day for Cultural Properties, which serves as a reminder of the dangers of a fire and other possible disasters. Similarly, the fire that broke out at the Notre Dame in Paris is said to have also started during the process of conservation. With the enactment of this law, Japan established institutions and organizations responsible for the conservation of その後、お寺や建物に限らず、様々な例えば仏像や絵画なども守ろうということで、国宝に関する法律ができていきます。こういう法律を作った背景には、急激に欧米化していくということもあったのですが、それと同時に日本の古い物を海外の方が買っていくということで、売買によって海外に売ってしまって流出していくことを防ぎたいということもあったようです。

次に動きがあったのは、第二次世界大戦後の 1950 年になります。戦争で多くの文化財、建物が壊れ、ただでさえ文化財が少なくなっていた。それと同時に敗戦で貧しくなった日本人が、日本の物を海外に売ってお金をつくろうとするなど、さらに海外流出が進みそうでした。このとき知識人や政府は、海外流出を止めたいということで、法律を準備し始めます。ところがその当時、国連軍に日本は統治されていたわけですが、GHQ がその法律を施行することを許してくれませんでした。

そんな中、どうしてこの法律が動き出したかというと、その契機になったのが 1949 年に起きた法隆寺という有名なお寺の国宝の壁画の火事です。このときはさすがに、知識人や一部の政府の人たちだけではなくて、日本国民もこれは何とかしないといけないと思ったようです。そういった一般市民の働き掛けもあって、ようやく 1950 年にこの法律が動き出しました。

この 1949 年の火事というのは、われわれ文化財を守る人間にとっても、非常に大きな意味を持つ火事でした。なぜかというと、これは修復中に起きた火事だからです。当時は、まず国宝である壁画の状態を正確に記録するということで、模写をしていました。そのときの作業員の電気毛布の電源が入れっぱなしになっていて、そこから火事が起きたといわれています。現在、この日を文化財防火デーという日に指定して、文化財の安全を確認する日となっています。この前、パリのノートルダムが燃えたときも、何かの修理中だったというニュースがありましたが、そういった意味でも、意味の深い日です。この 1950 年の法律を基に、日本の中にはそれを守るための組織というのがつくられていきます。

組織の改編などありましたが、現状まず大きな区分として、文部科学省というのがあって、その下に文化庁というのがあります。2000年までは、われわれの研究所は、この文化庁の一部でした。その後、日本の国の政治

cultural properties.

There have been some changes throughout history, but as of today, we have the umbrella organization, the Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology, and under that, we have the Agency for Cultural Affairs. Until 2000, our institute was part of this agency. Following some restructuring, the institute was declared to be independent. Later, the National Museum and the National Research Institute worked together to form the network of the National Institutes for Cultural Heritage.

To protect cultural properties, the national government designates the most important artifacts. Since Japan consists of prefectures, these initiatives are also present at the prefecture and city municipallevels. The slide shows a list of different designations (Fig. 2). Those that are indicated in light color are related to paper conservation, but there are other kinds of designations as well.

As for tangible cultural properties, I have excluded architecture; however, since it also has some paper-based cultural properties, it is not unrelated. The majority of items in the tangible category include books, paintings, and paper itself. In the case of intangible cultural properties, we refer mostly to techniques, for example, a paper-making technique.

These two categories are considered parts of high culture. The third category is Folk Cultural Properties. Considering the case in the previous paragraph, the folk cultural properties would involve the paper maker's household or lifestyle – something directly related to the paper maker's way of living.

We have a special designation for techniques, which is necessary for preserve cultural properties, called "Selected Conservation Techniques.". To clarify the preservation techniques of cultural properties, let me use the example of the Kabuki plays. Kabuki is a form of Japanese theater, and some Kabuki performers are designated as important intangible cultural properties. However, as you know, performers

的な改変があって、われわれの研究所は独立しました。 その後も変化があり、最終的には国立博物館と研究所な どが一つの大きな組織になっています。

では法的に実際に物をどう守るかというと、日本には 州がないので、国が指定という方法で守っていきます。 県や市でも同様に指定制度があります。このリストは指 定の種類です(Fig. 2)。色が薄くなっているところは、 紙に関わるものですが、他にも様々な種類があります。

•	Designation (National)
_	 Tangible Cultural Properties (Architecture, Art object and Handicraft)
OF Japan	Intangible Cultural Properties
NO NO	Folk Cultural Properties
RTIES	Monuments
PROF	Cultural Landscapes
System for Protection Cultural Properties in	 Preservation Districts for Groups of Traditional Buildings
Systi	Techniques for the Preservation of Cultural Properties
0	Buried Cultural Properties

Fig. 2 A list of designations 指定の種類

有形の文化財について、建造物は除いてありますが、 実は建造物の一部に日本の場合は紙の戸などが含まれ ており、全く関係ないわけではありません。その他でい うと、本や紙に描いた絵、紙そのものなどが入ります。 無形の文化財は、主に技術的なものが入ります。紙でい うと、紙を作る技術がここに入っています。

ここまでは、いわゆるハイカルチャーに近いものが対象でしたが、最近ではもう少し一般人に近いところで、 民俗文化財というカテゴリができました。これはもっと 民俗に密接ということで、紙をすく職人の家や生活、そういったことに直接関わっているものなどが入ってきます。

もう一つ特徴的なものとして、選定保存技術という、 他の文化財を守るために必要な技術というのがあります。例えば、日本の舞台芸能に歌舞伎というものがあり、 これを演じる技能自体は国宝になっています。しかし、 役者だけでは、実はパフォーミングアートとしては完成 しません。例えば特殊な衣装、かつらなどのヘアメイク、 舞台を造ったり、特殊な音楽を奏でたりというものがあ り、それらを担う人たちがいないとできません。そうい alone do not make up Kabuki culture. Kabuki culture includes dressmakers and wig makers, as well as musicians and those who build the theaters. The protection of techniques for the preservation of cultural properties is important because the supporting activities of a cultural property should be protected as well.

When we apply this to the case of paper's cultural properties, we first need to consider the tools for papermaking. When you need to restore a painting in the form of a hanging scroll, you need someone who knows the techniques for mounting the scroll and people who make mounting tools. All these techniques and people who know them are categorized as "Conservation Techniques for Cultural Properties." Thus, in your practical work session, you will learn a traditional mounting technique.

The Japanese government's first step is selecting the technique, identifying people or groups of people who possess the technique, and certifying them as holders of the technique. The teachers here come from such an association called the "Association for Conservation of National Treasures," a group certified as holders of the technique. Currently, 12 private studios are affiliated to the association. The conservators here specialize in the restoration of paintings or calligraphic works and books. This association has its own certification system, and the conservators are classified into different classes depending on the techniques they possess. There are prerequisites for each class that require taking an exam. Once the specialist passes the exam, he or she is certified and moves up in the class. This certification system was initially developed for the members belonging to the 12 studios; however, presently, the test is also open to other people.

Let us now examine the details of the traditional mounting technique, called *soko* or *hyogu*, in Japanese. When we look up words such as *soko*,

った役者以外の周りも守りましょうというのが、この考 え方です。

紙の場合は、紙の文化財を守ろうとすると、例えば紙を作るための道具がまず必要です。それから、例えば掛軸になっている絵を直そうと思えば、その掛軸を作る技術を持っている人がいなければなりません。もちろん、それに必要な道具を作る人もいなければいけないということで、こういったものが全部入ってきます。明日から皆さんに学んでいただくのは、この技術です。伝統的な表具に基づいた修復方法というのを、学んでいただきます。

では、伝統的な表具の技術について、もう少し詳しく見ていきます。伝統的なマウンティングのことを、日本語では装潢あるいは表具などといいます。表具や表装、装潢という言葉は、辞書を引いても大体似たような意味です。漢字を見ると分かるのですが表具は表紙を付けるという意味です。ぺらぺらの紙に何か表紙を付けて、形にしていくというような意味です。表装は表紙を付けたり、デコレーションしたりという意味になります。装潢は、紙を色で染めるという意味です。紙を染めるという意味の理由は、お経は黄色く染められていたことが多くて、それから来ているのだろうといわれています。もし博物館に行くことがあれば、もともと黄色だった色が、色あせて茶色になっていたり、あるいは紺色のお経などを見ることができます。

hyogu, and hyoso, they have very similar meanings. If you can read Chinese characters, then I think it is clearer, but hyogu means "to put a cover," for example in the case of a very fragile piece of paper. In addition, hyoso or hyogu means "covering or putting on some decoration." The Chinese characters of the last term soko refer to the dye paper. This word represents the fact that in the early days, Buddhist scriptures were written on dyed paper. At museums, you might notice Buddhist scriptures that are on brownish paper. Originally, the paper was dyed yellow, but owing to ageing and discoloration, the yellow has now turned brownish. Buddhist scriptures were also written on navy dyed papers.

Such techniques were first developed in China. There are several theories, but the latest is that the technique was introduced in Japan before the 12th century when a number of Chinese monks traveled to the region, and they were believed to bring some of these techniques with their Buddhist scriptures. Only the time period (12th century) can be verified using archival documentation.

Paper-making techniques were also introduced from China via the Korean peninsula in the 7th century, but we believe that it could be much earlier than that. What we now consider as Japanese traditional mounting techniques may have been developed in the 14th century. This infers that the techniques were brought from China and they evolved over a few centuries in Japan. This evolution or development still contained some very old elements of Chinese traditional mounting techniques. As you see, with the transformation of different cultural elements. the core evolves, but the other minor details and elements are normally retained. When comparing the Chinese mounting techniques to the Japanese ones, you might find older elements in traditional Japanese techniques.

この技術というのは、中国で発祥したものです。諸説 あるのですが、遅くとも 12 世紀までには、日本にこの 技術が伝えられています。ただ実際には、もっと昔から 中国から僧侶が来ていますので、お経とともにもっと前 から来ていたとは思いますが、確実に文献的に記録が残 っているのは、12 世紀といわれています。

和紙自体も中国から韓国を経由して7世紀に伝えられたと言われていますが、実際にはもっと前から、紙を作る人や紙の技術が入ってきたと思われます。日本のこの表具、表装の仕方というのは、14世紀に確立されたといわれています。つまり、中国から表装の技術が伝えられ、その後、何百年もかけて、日本の中で発展していったということを意味します。発展したと言いましたが、実際には古い中国の方法がそのまま形として残っています。これは文化の派生の中でよく起こることですが、一番主流のところはどんどん変わっていき、その分かれていった先のほうが、オリジナルに近いものが残っているというよくある流れです。今の中国の表具と、日本の表具を見ると、おそらく日本のほうが古い形が残っていると思います。

表具には形がいくつかあり。ここでは三つ取り上げま す。まず巻く物です。横向きに巻いてある物で、テーブ ルの上に広げて見る物が、巻子や巻物、縦方向に巻いて、 壁に掛けて見る物が掛軸、掛け物です。巻子と巻物の違 いは何かと聞かれることがありますが、意味の違いは基 本的にはあまりなく、人や地域によって違うようです。 まず、巻子を見ていきます。絵があって、そこに表紙を 付けてあります。左上の写真が表紙の表側です(Fig. 3)。 右上の写真が表紙の裏側の所ですが、ここの紙には金の 装飾が施されています。先ほどの言葉の意味のとおり、 表紙を付けてデコレーションしてあります。巻子は横に 長く続いていき、最後に余分な紙があり、その先に巻く ための軸棒があります。博物館では、たくさん見せたい ので、長く広げて展示してあることがありますが、本来 はそういう使い方はせずに、自分の肩幅ぐらいずつ広げ ていきます。ワンシーンずつなど、細かく見ていくので、 長く広げて見るものではありませんでした。順番に送り ながら次のシーンで場面が展開したり、時間が経過す る、というふうに見ていくものでした。人によっては、

Let me now introduce the three forms of *hyogu*. The scrolls, *Kansu* or *Makimono*, are generally rolled horizontally and then viewed, rolled out, on a table. *Kakejiku* or *Kakemono* refers to the hanging scrolls that are rolled vertically and then hung on a wall. One might wonder what is the differences between *Kansu* and *Makimono*. In reality, they are the same. The difference arises from the regions and the people using them.

Let us take a deeper look at handscrolls. They have a main artwork which has the painting and are accompanied with a cover. The photograph shows the front of the cover, the other shows the reverse of the cover that is decorated with gold leaves (Fig. 3). Literally, it is a cover with added decorations. Handscrolls continue vertically, as it is generally a long piece of work; at the end, you have a rolling rod. When handscrolls are exhibited at museums, to display a large surface area of the painting or work, they are sometimes spread out across an exhibit table, but this is not how handscrolls were actually used. Handscrolls spread to about the width of the shoulders. Each width of the shoulder should represent one frame of a scenery or story. Handscrolls were thus not meant to be seen in their entirety and had to be rolled from one frame to the next, and so on. Some believe that this contributed to the development of Japanese manga and animation culture.

Another aspect of restoration in Japan is that of producing wrapping paper or boxes for storage. A cover functions as the first layer of protection for a handscroll. Usually, a handscroll is placed in a wooden box, which has a cover made of paper and cloth. This is a simplified version consisting of only three protection elements. A more complicated version would include a wrapping paper to wrap the handscroll, and sometimes an additional box to store the box.

Multiple protective layers are provided for practical reasons including protection form the

これが今の日本のマンガ、アニメ文化につながっている という人もいます。

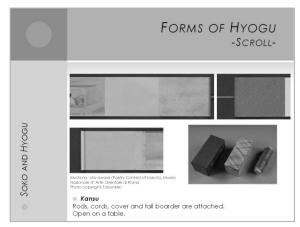


Fig. 3 Handscrolls 巻子

もう一つ、日本の文化財の特徴として、保存をするための箱や包みというものがあります。まず、巻いた状態で表紙があるので、これが最初のプロテクションになります。これを基本的には木の箱に入れます。さらにこの箱を包む紙と布製のカバーが付いています。これが三つしかないすごく簡素なパターンです。日本の場合、さらに複雑な場合は、これにまず、掛軸をラッピングする紙や布が付きます。木箱ごと入れる大きな箱が付くこともあります。

こういう何重にもするというのは、高温多湿といった 日本の気候や災害が多いことも理由としてありますし、 文化的な側面もあります。まず、保存の観点から話しま す。箱には桐という特定の木を使います。桐にはいくつ か特徴があり、まず火がつきにくいということがありま す。そのため、火事で外側が焦げていても中は無事です。 火事で中身が燃えないもう一つの理由は、多孔質である ことです。空気の細かい粒が多く入っているので、外の 熱が直接ダイレクトに中に伝わりません。

もう一つの特徴は、桐の箱は水に浮きます。そのため 水害にも強いです。2011年に大きな地震が日本であり、 桐の箱に入れていた物が洪水に遭ったのですが、水に浮 いていてしかも中に水が入ってこなくて助かったとい う例がありました。また、何重にもすることで湿度が高 い日にも湿気が中に入りにくくするという意味もあり ます。もちろんこれは湿気だけでなく、虫も防ぐことが できます。逆に湿気がたまりやすくなるのではという質 Japanese climate, and the numerous natural disasters in the country. However, there is a cultural aspect to this, but first, let me talk about it from the perspective of preservation. To make this wooden box, we used a specific paulownia tree, which has particular characteristics. First, it is fire resistant, in that, even if the paulownia box was burnt, its contents remained intact. The paulownia wood is also porous; it has many air spaces, which prevent fire from entering the box.

In addition, a paulownia wooden box can float on water, and is more likely to survive water disasters. For example, in the 2011 earthquake in Japan, items contained in paulownia boxes was found to be intact because the box floated on water. Also, we tend to provide so many layers of protection when humidity is high, because trees prevent humidity from entering a space and thus from entering the box, and therefore the handscroll. In addition to humidity, the wood also prevents insect damage. You might think that the box might retain some degree of humidity, but there are some ways to avoid it. You could open the box on a regular basis and then take a look at the cultural artifact inside. The Japanese conventional folk wisdom to decrease the humidity in these boxes, for example, in spring and autumn, calls for people to open up these boxes. The opening of the boxes serves as an inspection, to leave out humidity, and to check for insect damage. As a result of aging, the acidity levels are higher, and opening and inspecting boxes and their items on a regular basis helps release this acidity. These are the physical effects of the justification for the multiple layer protection provided in Japan.

Additionally, Japanese people tend to wrap and preserve important items carefully. For example, if a person decides to hand down his handscrolls to his subordinate, the subordinate who received the gift, which includes the box, will protect the box as well. The subordinate thus makes a box to protect the original box; later, when the subordinate decides to

問もありますが、それに対応する日本の知恵があります。それは定期的に開けて見るということです。日本には、春と秋にちょうどいい気温、ちょうどいい湿度の時期があり、そのときに箱を開けて中身を出します。定期的に開けるというのは、非常に重要な意味があります。こもった湿気を外に出したり、虫に食われてないかチェックすること。それと同時に、紙が古くなってくると酸が発生するわけですが、そういったものを空気中に放出させるというような役割もあります。このような理由で、まずは物理的な保存という観点からの何重にも囲う必要がありました。

もう一つの文化的な側面については、日本人は大切な 物は包みましょう、しまっておきましょうという傾向が 非常に強くあります。例えば、上司から部下にプレゼン トとして、箱に入った巻子を渡すとします。そうすると その部下は、この箱も含めて大切だということで、その 箱を守るための箱を作ります。またその部下が他の人に プレゼントすると、同じようにまた箱を作るということ で、箱、箱、箱と何重もの箱になっていくというのがあ ります。私が実際に見た例だと、箱を5つほど開けて出 てきたのがとても小さな巻子だったということがあり ます。逆に言うと、それがいかに重要で、かつ何代も世 代を重ねて守られてきたかということが分かる歴史的 証拠でもあります。もう一つ、これは特に日本の作品を 持っている方に心に留めておいてほしいことですが、箱 が重要な理由として、箱やそのカバーである紙にいろい ろ書いてあることがあります。この巻子を誰々からもら いました、いつもらいました、などという情報が書いて あることがあります。知らないとただの箱だと思って、 たまに捨ててしまう人がいるのですが、非常に重要な歴 史的な証拠である可能性があるので、気を付けてくださ い。最近、博物館の収蔵庫も狭いので、箱は要らないと いうこともあると思いますが、気を付けてください。 続いて掛軸についてお話します。掛軸は床の間という特 殊なスペースに掛けて鑑賞するものです。日本は床に座 る文化ですので、床に座って掛軸を見ます。お寺で掛軸 を見る機会がある場合、掛軸の位置が低いなと思うかも しれませんが、座って見るとちょうどいい高さです。で すので、展示をする際は、そのことを考えて展示してい ただくといいかもしれません。それからもう一つ、低い pass it to another person, then this third person, considers both boxes as very important artifacts, and so, he would create another box to contain the first and second boxes and the contents, which is the cultural item. In one of my case studies, I had to open five boxes, and they eventually contained a very small handscroll. This episode tells us that the item was very important and that it had been passed down from generation to generation.

This is important information for those who actually have Japanese items in their institutions, but there is another reason why the box is important. There could be some information written on the surface of the wooden box or its paper cover. Normally, writing speaks of the provenance of the item, where the item came from, and who gave this item to whom and when.

If unaware, some people might throw away the box. However, the box could be an important source of historical documentation, so I request people to not discard it. I think because we have limited storage space, there are cases where people might remove the boxes since they take up too much space, but please keep in mind that the box is an important source of information.

Let me now turn to hanging scrolls. Hanging scrolls are often supposed to be hung in the particular alcove of a guest room called *tokonoma*. In Japan, people traditionally sit on the floor and view these artworks. When you have a chance to visit temples and see these hanging scrolls, you might find their height or the positions a bit too low, but you would find it in an appropriate height, when you are seated on the floor. Thus, when you need to put your hanging scrolls on display or for exhibit, you might want to take that into consideration, as they are originally viewed at the eye level of people who sit on the floor. This is reflected in the mounting format. As can be seen, the painting is surrounded by extra fabric, but the top fabric is larger than the bottom. When you view the hanging

ところから見るというのは、表具のプロポーションにも 関わっています。絵の上と下の裂を見ると、下のほうが 短いですよね。これは座って見たときに、上が長くて、 下が短いほうが比率的に違和感なく見られるようにす るためです。上下の長さを同じにすると、上が短く見え てしまいます。

これは掛軸と巻子の構造を示した図になります (Fig. 4)。掛軸や巻子を修理したことがある方は、ご存じだと思いますが、これらは紙が何層にも重なっています。皆さんには、本研修で巻子の制作をしていただき、日本の装潢修理技術者が、どういうふうに紙を選び、どういうふうに糊を選び、直しているのかということを知ってもらいます。このような構造が必要な理由は、巻くためです。巻くのがそんなに重要なのかと思われるかもしれませんが、重要です。そもそも巻子の一字目の漢字は巻くという意味です。掛軸は客間の床の間に掛けるものですが、お客さんや季節に合わせて頻繁に掛け替えるものです。このお客さまにはこれを掛けようと考えながら掛け、そしてお客さまが帰ったら巻いてしまうところまでが、一つの文化なわけです。だから巻いてしまえないと、掛軸ではなくなってしまいます。

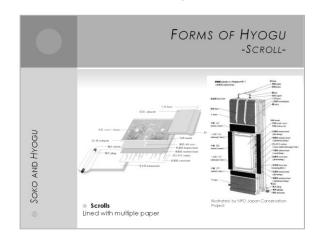


Fig. 4 Structure of scrolls 巻子と掛軸の構造

次はパネル状の物です。パネルの例として、襖というものを挙げています。絵が付いているときもあります。 襖の面白い特徴として、一つの大きな部屋になっている 空間を襖で仕切りをしていくつかの部屋に分けること ができます。廊下があるようにも見えるところも、壁で はなく襖は簡単に取りはずしができます。襖は木枠と紙 でできているので、非常に軽いです。仮張りと同じよう scroll while seated, the proportion of these portions appear appropriate as the portions on the top and bottom are seemed same length. If the length of top and bottom are same, you might feel the top portion too short or unproportionate.

These two diagrams indicate the structure of hanging scrolls and handscrolls (Fig. 4). People with experience of restoring scrolls should be aware of the scroll's multiple layers of paper. In your practical work session, you will produce a handscroll and, thus, you will be aware of the kind of paper used for each part of scroll, and the kind of paste used for different purposes. This multiple-layered structure is necessary because these items need to be rolled. The act of rolling is important. The first Chinese character of kansu refers to a roll. Since hanging scrolls are displayed in the guest room, they need to be changed frequently to entertain your guests, depending on their preferences, the season, and the occasion. The culture of hanging scrolls in the alcove of your guest room starts with the decision to choose which item might be appropriate for a particular guest and finishes with roll up the scroll and store them.

Now, let us discuss the panels. Sometimes, sliding doors have paintings. As features of sliding doors, they can partition the big one room into several rooms. In other cases, a passage is partitioned by sliding doors, that can be easily removed from their tracks. Each panel consists of a wooden frame and paper; therefore, they are very light. It has the same construction as the *karibarai* panel. In Japanese culture, when inviting relatives or hosting a big party in the house, the host can take out these sliding doors to create a big space to accommodate all guests.

Next, we look at folding screens, the structure of which is the same as that of sliding doors; it is a panel consisting of wooden frames and paper (Fig. 5, Fig. 6). The panels are joined using paper hinges, that open at 360°. In most cases, especially in museums, the folding

な構造で、持って運べます。日本の場合、普段は仕切っている所を、例えば、親族の集まりなどをするときには 全部扉を外して、大きな広間として使ったりします。

屏風も基本的な構造としては襖と同じで、木と紙のパネルです。パネルとパネルを紙で作った蝶番でつないで、動くようにしているものです(Fig. 5、Fig. 6)。この紙の蝶番は、360度回転します。博物館で見ると、アコーディオンや M 字のような形の展示を見ることが多いと思いますが、実際にはいろんな形にその都度合わせて、形つくっていたということが分かっています。いろんな形でパーティションとして使っていた様子が絵として残っています。パネルの構造ですが、単純に木板に紙を1枚貼っただけではなくて、切り方の異なる様々な紙がそれぞれ異なった方法で貼ってあります。

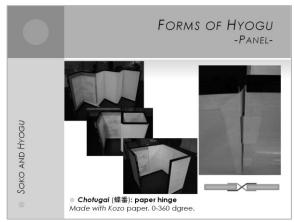


Fig. 5 Paper hinges of a folding screen 屏風の紙の蝶番

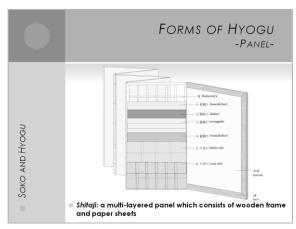


Fig. 6 Structure of a panel パネルの構造

最後になりますが、本です。本研修では、和綴じ本も 作っていただきます。日本の本の特徴には、和紙の特徴 が大きく関わってきます。ご存じの通り、和紙は非常に panels are often displayed like an accordion, but these panels can be displayed in different ways depending on the occasion. There are some paintings which show how folding panels are used in different forms or shapes. This diagram shows the structure of the folding screen, that consists of a wooden frame and multiple layers of paper, with each layer cut and applied in different ways.

The final format of paper heritage is books. In practical work, you will make a book using traditional Japanese binding. The main feature of Japanese books is that they are made of Japanese paper. As you know, Japanese paper is very thin, thus you cannot print on both sides. Thus, the paper is folded in the center and then bound (Fig. 7, Fig. 8).

As mentioned earlier, the Japanese traditionally wrap or encase items that they deem important, and that they make important art into a hanging or handscrolls. For example, this is a draft of a letter purchased in China and brought to Japan. This draft was made into a handscroll at the beginning of the 20th century. Later, in the beginning of the 21st century, people decided to restore this piece, and there were discussions about its restoration, regarding whether it should be restored as a handscroll, or be brought back to its original format. Say, in this case, they decided to bring it back to its original format of a letter. This letter was written around the 4th century and then it remained as one for nearly 1500 years. When compared to the history of the work as a handscroll, which was nearly only 100 years, a relatively short period. Thus, it is kept as a letter. The second reason for it being restored as a letter was the fact that it was written on very old Chinese paper made from hemp cloth. It contained fragments of hemp cloth which are visible only on the reverse side of this letter. If you apply lining paper like that in scrolls, we will not be able see this historical evidence of papermaking. As paper, the letter was strong

薄く、両面に書いてしまうと、裏が透けてしまって字が 読めなくなるので両面には書けません。そのため、多く の本は、紙の片面だけに書いて、それを折り曲げて作ら れています(Fig. 7、Fig. 8)。

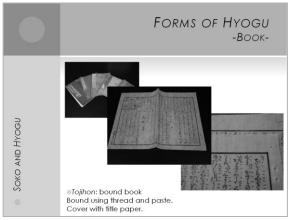


Fig. 7 Bound books 綴じ本

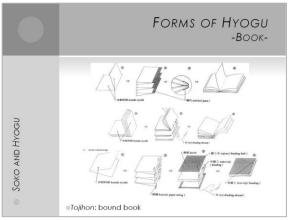


Fig. 8 Structure of a bound book 綴じ本の構造

先ほど日本人は大切な物は包みたがる、守るために包んだり箱に入れたりするという話をしましたが、昔は大切な物はみんな掛軸や巻子にしたりしようという文化もありました。一つの事例をご紹介します。これはもともと、1 枚の手紙の下書きでした。中国で買ってきた物で大切だということで、20 世紀初頭に巻子の形に表具されていました。これを 21 世紀に入って修復をしようという話になったのですが、そこでどうするかという議論がありました。この作品の歴史として、巻子となったことも歴史なので、それを残すのか、あるいは元の1枚の手紙にするのかということです。結局このときは、1 枚の手紙に戻しました。それは、この手紙が4世紀のものであり、それから1500年間度はずっと1枚の手紙の形

enough and thus, did not need a lining, but only needed partial reinforcements. Thus, in this particular situation, this handscroll was restored to the form of a letter.

- Q: Are there any standard dimensions for the mounting of scrolls?
- A: As for the proportions of different elements of mounting a hanging scroll and handscrolls, you might encounter books or papers that state a specific proportion, but in reality, there is no specific rule. The idea of proportions is passed down by, for example, the teacher to his students. It depends on the studios, who choose the different proportions of the different elements in the mounting process. In addition, it varies depending on the time period during which the scrolls are produced. There are no specific proportions.
- Q: If the scroll is longer, does it mean that it has a special quality? Alternatively, do longer artworks refer to the importance of the scroll?
- A: It does not necessarily mean that a longer scroll is better. For example, for the lower fabric of a hanging scroll, you need at least the amount of fabric to make sure that the rolling rod does not touch the main artwork, when you roll the hanging scroll from the bottom. Also, earlier I only talked about the aesthetic aspect of the upper fabric, but you also need a certain amount of fabric on the upper part, so as to not touch the hanging rod to the artwork, and to be able to cover the entire artwork when you have rolled up the scroll.

状であって、巻子になったのは 100 年ほどの期間しかないわけです。それからもう一つ、これはかなり古い中国の紙を使用しており、麻の布をつぶして崩して作った布の破片が見えます。その破片は裏側からしか見えないため、表具をして裏打ちをしてしまうと、製紙技術の歴史的証拠が見えなくなってしまいます。かつ、この作品は紙として十分な強さを持っていたため、裏打ちの必要がなく、部分的な補強だけをしても大丈夫だということになりました。これらの理由から、このときには1枚物に戻したという例をお示ししました。

- Q: 巻物について、表具の標準的な寸法などはあり ますか?
- A: 理想的なプロポーションについて書いてある本 もありますが、基本的には師匠から弟子へ伝え られるため明確に数字が決まっているわけでは ありません。工房あるいは時代によって違った りもします。
- Q: 長ければ長いほど重要とか。
- A: というわけではないです。例えば巻いていったときに、木の軸が直接絵に触れないぐらいの長さが、最低でも必要にはなります。上の裂についても、先ほど見た目の話だけしましたが、実際には巻いたときに、直接軸に絵が触れることがないよう、また絵が巻き終わってその後に1周以上の十分な長さが必要になります。

2 On Adhesives Used in the Restoration of Japanese Paintings 日本画修復に使われる接着剤について

Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties HAYAKAWA Noriko

I am Noriko Hayakawa of the Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties. Today, I would like to talk about the traditional adhesives used and available in Japan. I am a polymer scientist, but at this institute, I work on traditional adhesives and how they are used. I also work on contemporary adhesives as well, but today, my talk focuses on traditional adhesives.

First, I am going to introduce adhesives used for paper conservation in Japan (Fig. 1). The most commonly used adhesive agent is wheat starch paste. The second is fermented wheat starch, which is called "aged paste" and is fermented about 10 years. The third is seaweed paste, or *funori*. The last is called *nikawa*, which is an animal glue used mainly for consolidation of main artwork.

You see, the first three kinds contain the word *nori*, which means "paste" in English, so these three terms can be quite confusing to Japanese people. Also, the second and third kinds, they sound quite similar—furu and fu—but these two terms are totally different. Furu means, as it is translated, "aged" or "aging". Fu means, cloth. Funori, or seaweed paste, was used as laundry starch and adhesion of clothes. This is why seaweed paste in Japanese is known as 'clothes paste,' or funori. So, even though funori and furunori sound quite similar, they are totally different in terms of usage and content.

Let me explain the differences in usage of these pastes. *Nori*, which is wheat starch paste, and *furunori*, which is fermented starch paste, are used for lining. *Funori*, which is seaweed paste, is used for facing in conservation work. Seaweed paste is also used as a thickener and is mixed with animal glue or

東京文化財研究所

早川 典子

東京文化財研究所の早川です。今日は皆さんと、日本の伝統的な接着剤についてお話していきたいと思います。私自身はもともと高分子化学の専門ですが、研究所では伝統的な接着剤や接着剤の使用について主に研究をしています。もちろん新しい接着剤についても研究しているのですが、今日は古いほうの話を中心に進めたいと思います。

では最初に、日本のペーパー・コンサベーションの中で使われている接着剤について、まずご紹介していきたいと思います(Fig. 1)。上から順に紹介していきますと、まず一番メジャーに使われているのが、小麦のデンプン糊です。次が、それを 10 年程度発酵させて作った古糊と言われるものです。三つ目が、布海苔です。最後に、表具の仕立てというより本紙の剥落止めに使われるものが膠(にかわ)です。

Traditional adhesive agents in Japan

- -Nori (paste) wheat starch paste
- -Furu-nori (aged paste)
- -Fu-nori (seaweed paste)
- -Nikawa (animal glue)

Fig. 1 Traditional adhesive agents in Japan 日本の伝統的接着剤

どれにも「ノリ」という言葉が付いていて、非常に混乱しやすいですが、糊という言葉は英語における「ペースト」を意味するので、どれにも付いてしまいます。もう一つ、2番目と3番目が「フル」と「フ」で混乱が生じやすい言葉ですが、これは全然違う言葉になります。「フル」は、この訳の通り古いという意味です。「フ」の方は布を意味します。布は、昔から洗濯のりとか、布の

wheat starch paste. *Nikawa*, which is animal glue is used for consolidation. Recently, cellulose ethers have been used instead of animal glue. The kinds of adhesives you are using in this course are basically these four kinds. Let us go into the details of each paste and glue.

First, I would like to talk about starch pastes. The kind of starch paste used for paper conservation is mostly derived from wheat, but there are different kinds of starch pastes in Japan (Fig. 2). I would like to introduce each kind of starch paste, its name, and how it is used.

The most used starch paste is wheat starch paste, but to my knowledge, there are at least four different names that refer to this starch paste in Japan: <code>jinnori</code>, <code>shinnori</code>, <code>shoufunori</code>, and <code>ginshoufu</code>. The first three of these also have <code>nori</code>. The fourth one refers to the same thing, but the difference in naming comes from different regions and uses. In most books about paper conservation in Japan, you will probably come across these four different names. But whatever name you find in your reference book, for the material, please understand that they all refer to wheat starch paste.

The starch paste I just talked about uses only starch, but there are other kinds of pastes that use whole-wheat flour. Strong flour paste was also used before World War II. It was used for wooden clogs as well as regular shoe soles. But today, it has been replaced with synthetic adhesives, so it is no longer used for clogs or shoe soles.

The third kind is derived from rice powder. This paste is used to affix paper and wood, so you might have come across this type of paste when you worked on restoration and conservation. This paste is made from rice powder to which water is added and then also heated. There is another kind of rice paste derived from rice, called *sokui*, which is made from cooked rice. The cooked rice is kneaded many times and made into a paste. This kind of paste was

接着に使われてきたので、布に使う糊ということで、布 海苔と言われています。非常に音としては似ているもの が並ぶのですが、ものとしても用途としても全然違う内 容になります。

それぞれの使用の目的について、整理しておきます。 小麦のデンプン糊と、それを発酵させた古糊は裏打ちに 使われます。布に使われていた布海苔は、装潢では表面 の一時的な養生に使われます。また、主成分ではないで すが、布海苔は膠や小麦デンプン糊に混ぜて増粘剤とし ても使われます。顔料を再接着、いわゆる剥落止めをす るときに使うのが膠です。最近は、膠以外にもセルロー スエーテルも使われるようになりました。皆さんがこの 研修の中で使用される接着剤は、ほぼこの4種類だと思 います。では、それぞれの接着剤について詳しく見てい きたいと思います。

最初にデンプン糊についてお話していきたいと思います。皆さんが本研修や紙のコンサベーションで使う糊は主に小麦由来のものですが、それ以外にも日本にはいろんな種類のデンプンがあります (Fig. 2)。一つずつ種類、名前、用途についてご紹介していきたいと思います。

paste	name in Japanese	uses
wheat starch paste	jin-nori shin-nori shofu-nori gin-jofu	Paper lining
strong flour paste	Banjaku-nori	Clogs (footwear)
rice powder paste	hime-nori	Wooden craft
rice paste	sokui	Common adhesive
sticky rice paste (glutenous rice)	Kanbaiko-nori	Hide, wood (musical instruments, dolls)

Fig. 2 Kinds of starch pastes in Japan 日本におけるデンプン糊の種類

まず一つ目の皆さんがおそらくたくさん使うであろう小麦デンプン糊ですが、私が知っている限りでも、日本の中で4種類ほど呼び方があります。沈糊、新糊、正 麩糊、銀生麩という4種類があり、ほとんど後ろに糊が付いております。ですが、これは全て同じものです。名前は地域や、用途に主を置いて表現しているか、それとも何から作ったのかという由来を意味しているのかで

commonly used in everyday life. For example, for closing an envelope, or also very minor repairs. Sometimes, I come across works of art that have been repaired with *sokuri*, so you might also have that experience, or you might come across other cases where rice paste has been used.

The fifth kind is derived from glutinous rice. The glutinous rice is steamed, made into a rice cake, dried, and then ground into a powder. Because it is cooked, it becomes a sticky paste again with the addition of a small amount of water. Thus, this type of paste is suitable for the kind of work in which the use of water needs to be avoided as much as possible. It is mostly used for the attachment of leather and wood, for things such as traditional Japanese musical instruments. Also, it is mixed with sawdust to mold the heads of dolls.

The last kind is not very common, but there are cases in which a bracken paste was used as a coating material. It was used for crafts made with paper attached to braided wood.

I would like to talk about starch pastes, how they are used, and their chemical composition. Today, you are going to cook wheat starch paste, and normally in Japan we use a very large pot to cook it. As you know, wheat starch is used for lining. Generally, the starch and protein are separated from wheat flour. Starch is sold at a market, but if you have any interest in making it by yourself, you can do it at home (Fig. 3). First, you add water to wheat flour and knead it to get a dough. Then, you put the dough in water and squeeze it many times, and you will see the starch and protein separate. What is left inside the gauze is protein, and what sinks in the water is starch.

Next, I would like to move on to the more chemical aspects of starch pastes. As you know, starch is made of glucose. The linear bonded glucose chain is amylose, and the branched glucose chain is amylopectin. All kinds of starch contain both amylose and amylopectin,

違います。日本のペーパー・コンサベーションの本を読んでいるとこの4種類が出てくると思いますが、これは全て同じものです。どれが出てきても、いわゆる小麦デンプン糊のことだと思っていただければと思います。

今までお話ししてきたものは、小麦のデンプンだけを 使ったものですけれども、小麦粉全体を使って作る接着 剤も日本にはあります。特にその中でも強力粉を使って こねて作った接着剤は、下駄や、戦前ぐらいまでは靴底 の貼り合わせとかにも使われていました。今は合成接着 剤に変ってしまったので、ほとんど使われません。

三つ目がお米の粉から作った糊です。これは紙と木を くっつける際によく使われるので、皆さんもしかしたら 紙の修復をしていて見たことがあるかもしれません。お 米を粉にした状態で水を加え、加熱した接着剤です。

それとは別に四つ目として、炊いたお米をこねて作る「続飯(そくい)」という、三つ目とは別の種類のお米の糊もあります。これは伝統的には日常的に使われる材料でした。どういうふうに使われるかというと、封筒を閉じる時や、日常的なちょっとした修理に使われていました。私は続飯で修復されている日本の作品を何度か見たことがあるので、皆さんもそういうものをご覧になることがあるかもしれないと思います。

五つ目がもち米のデンプンから作った糊です。これは 1回お餅にして粉にしているので、ちょっと水を加える だけですごく粘りのある接着剤になります。水が少量で すむので、水を少ししか使いたくないものの接着に使っ ています。革と木の接着、三味線やお琴等の伝統的な日 本の楽器によく使われています。あとは、木粉を混ぜて お人形の頭をモールドするときにも使います。

最後に、滅多にない事例ですが、ワラビの根のデンプンから作った糊も表面のコーティング剤として使われていたことがありました。木を組んで上に紙を被すというような細工ものの表面のコーティング剤です。

では、デンプン糊の使い道から化学的な話までお話し していきたいと思います。このあと皆さんもデンプン糊 を炊くと思いますが、一般的に日本では大きい釜で炊き ます。デンプン糊はご存知のように、裏打ちに使います。 一般的には、小麦粉からデンプンとタンパク質を分けて いきます。デンプンだけで売ってはいますが、もしやり but depending on the type of plant, the ratio of amylose and amylopectin varies. Generally speaking, in the case of wheat, the ratio of amylose and amylopectin is three to seven. In the case of rice, the amylose is about 20% of the starch. The third kind is glutinous rice, which contains only amylopectin, which makes this paste very sticky. The chemical structure of amylopectin is branched, so as a paste, it is more viscous.

As you know, when water is added to starch and heated, pasting starts. The temperature of pasting is different depending on the type of plant. The pasting temperature of wheat is relatively low. So, as you start to cook the paste, you can see it becoming more transparent, but the temperature is actually not so hot $(50-60\,^{\circ}\text{C})$.

Depending on the kind of wheat, the amount of protein differs. But depending on the kind of the wheat starch you are using, the protein is almost entirely removed. Wheat starch you are using, especially outside Japan, is mostly—I believe—a dried powder. But, in Japan, we normally use the wet state, which means that we leave the wheat starch in water, and use it wet, as it is still wet, which is called namajin. You can see how each granule is swollen in the wet state.

When the starch is heated, you can see the changes in each granule. Then, when pasting starts, you can see the changes (Fig. 4). The dispersion starts to become translucent, at that time each granule starts to open up. Also, this is about the time when you can see visual changes, which are more transparent. But in this middle process, although the color starts to become more transparent, each granule still retains some shape. When you stir the paste, you can feel some resistance and you still need some strength to continue stirring. As you continue cooking and stirring, each granule completely loses its shape, and then you will start to feel that the starch is loosened, making it easier for you to stir the paste as you cook.

たかったらご自分でもできます。小麦粉にお水を入れてこねていくと、このように分離します (Fig. 3)。それを水の中で何度もスクワッシュしていくと、分かれます。そのときに、このガーゼの中に残ったのが、タンパク質部分のグルテンです。水の中に沈んだものが、小麦デンプンです。

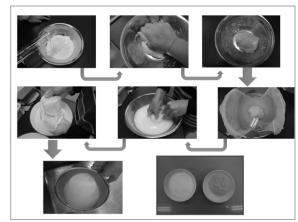


Fig. 3 Extraction of starch from wheat flour 小麦粉からのデンプンの抽出

次は化学的な話をしていきたいと思います。皆さんご存知かと思いますけど、まずデンプンというのはグルコース(ブドウ糖)からできています。グルコースがまっすぐにつながっているものをアミロース、枝分かれしてつながっていくのをアミロペクチンと言います。デンプンにはアミロースとアミロペクチンが入っていて、その比率が植物の種類によって異なります。その比率ですが、いろいろ揺らぎはあるものの、だいたい小麦だと3対7で、アミロースが3割入っています。お米だとやや少なくて2割くらいになります。もち米にいたってはアミロースがほとんどなくて、全部アミロペクチンなので、非常に粘りの強い性質を持っています。枝分かれしているアミロペクチンの方に炊いた時にとても粘りが出る性質があります。

皆さんご存知かと思いますけれども、水を加えて加熱すると糊化と言って、だんだん透明になり始めます。その温度がまた植物の種類によって異なります。一般的に小麦は割と低い温度で糊化が始まります。皆さんが炊き始めて透明になってきたなと思った地点は、まだ低い温度($50\sim60^{\circ}$ C)です。

最後にタンパク質の含有量ですが、ご存知のように小 麦にもいろんな種類があり、それぞれ含有比率が違うの When you cook the paste, especially outside Japan—as I have seen—you might stop cooking when the paste becomes transparent. When the paste becomes transparent, and when the paste is completely loosened, which is at about 95°C, the adhesion of these two kinds of paste is completely different. So, in your practical work for this course, I hope you will understand how the paste is cooked in Japan.

I would just like to explain what is happening from a chemical perspective. When the starch is still a granule, it means that the starch is folded and crystallized. When gelatinization or pasting starts, the starch starts to unfold and de-crystallize. When the starch completely de-crystallizes, this is when the starch paste is made (the right photo of Fig. 4). When the paste cools down, then gelation starts. The gelatinized form of paste is what you use for conservation. So, this is how the paste is made, up to this point, and when you store the paste, there are additional chemical processes. The paste eventually loses its stretchiness, or viscosity, and the adhesive force starts to become weaker the longer it is stored. Also, you may have some water appearing on the surface of the paste. What is happening here is that the starch molecules start to re-crystallize. Recrystallized parts of the paste cannot hold water and therefore the paste loses its viscosity and stretchiness. This process is referred as the retrogradation of paste.

The conditions that promote retrogradation are, first of all, long-term storage. Also, leaving the paste in a very cool or cold place will increase retrogradation. Leaving the paste in the fridge facilitates retrogradation. At paper conservation studios in Japan, instead of storing leftover paste, they cook smaller or only the necessary portions of paste and use it up in order to avoid retrogradation. That way, there will be no problem with mold growing on the paste. To my knowledge, outside Japan, paper conservators cook paste and the leftover part is often

ですが、皆さんが使うことになる小麦デンプンは、もうほとんどタンパク質は除去されてなくなっています。海外ではおそらく乾燥したパウダー状の小麦のデンプンを使っていらっしゃると思いますが、日本では乾かさないで取り出したものをずっと水の中で湿った状態で保存して使う生沈というタイプをよく使っています。

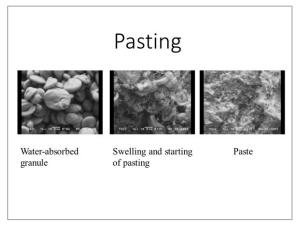


Fig. 4 Changes of starch glanue by heating 加熱によるデンプン粒子の変化

原料に水を加えて加熱していき糊化温度に達すると、それぞれの粒が開いて、どんどんほどけ始めます (Fig. 4)。このときに段々透明になってきます。透明にはなりますが、粒の形がまだあるのでかき混ぜるのがすごく重い状態です。さらに加熱していくと、形が完全に失われて中のデンプンがほどけ切った状態になり、その時にはサラサラに撹拌できるようになります。海外でデンプン糊を作るときは、小麦が透明になってきたこの段階で止めてしまうことが多いかと思いますが、この真ん中の写真の時の状態と、95℃くらいまで温度を完全に上げ左右の写真の状態で撹拌するのとでは接着力が全く違います。今回は日本風の炊き方を見て帰っていただければと思います。

これらがどういう状態になっているかという、化学的な説明をしていきたいと思います。最初の左の写真の粒の状態のときのデンプンというのは、分子がきちんと折りたたまれて結晶化している状態です。糊化が始まると、たたまれていたデンプンの分子がほどけ、結晶性を失っていくという状態です。完全に結晶性が無くなった状態が、右の炊いた状態です。それを冷やしていくとゲル化します。ゲル化したものが、皆さんが使ういわゆるデンプン糊です。ここまでで一応糊は完成しますが、こ

kept in the fridge, but I would like you to be aware that keeping it in a cool place, like a fridge, causes chemical changes in the paste as well as changes in terms of adhesive force.

Next, I would like to talk about fermented starch paste, which is aged for about 10 years. Aged paste is used only for hanging scrolls and hand scrolls, because it is flexible enough to be rolled. When you apply and use aged paste, it needs to be applied with a beating brush. The reason why a beating brush is used is that the adhesion strength of aged paste is relatively low.

This is how aged paste is made (Fig. 5). Starch paste is put in jars, and these jars are placed underneath the floor. As the paste is stored, mold grows on the surface of the paste. And when you remove the mold, you can see the paste underneath. Normally, the paste is stored and fermented for about 10 years. There are some cases in which the paste is stored longer than 10 years. Sometimes, in some other places, it is used earlier, so it's a younger paste. But there is a cultural aspect to this duration of 10 years. Normally, aged paste is cooked in winter and stored this way, but the novice conservators are in charge of cooking aged paste. Normally, it takes about 10 years for a conservator to become a full-fledged conservator. When the person becomes a full-fledged conservator, he or she can use the aged paste he or she cooked as a novice conservator. Traditionally, this life-cycle of conservators, starting as a beginner and working to become a full-fledged conservator, takes about 10 years. The fermentation of the paste also corresponds to this life-cycle of conservators in Japan.

Let me compare the characteristics of aged paste with wheat starch paste. During storage, aged paste tends to change color. Acidity increases and this is also an issue for conservators overseas. The viscosity of aged paste is low, so the texture is smooth and loose. It is more flexible. Also, the tension is low, meaning that when the aged paste is dried on the paper to

の糊をその後置いておくと変化していきます。だんだんとパサパサしてきたり、伸びが悪くなったり、接着力が落ちたり、上に水が浮いてきたりします。何が起きているかと言うと、ずっと糊を置いておくと部分的にデンプンの分子がまた結晶化し始めます。その再結晶した部分は水を抱え込めなくなるので、水が浮いてきたりとか、再結晶した部分はきれいに伸びてないので、パサパサしてきたりとか伸びが悪くなったりします。これをデンプンの老化と言います。

これがどんな条件で起きるかというと、長い間保存しておくと起きるのは確実ですが、もう一つ、冷たいところに保存しておくと起きやすくなります。冷蔵庫の中に保存しておくと、とても早く進行します。ですので、日本の修復工房では、数日ごとになるべくこまめに作ることで、あまり老化せず、カビも生えずに使い切ることを目標としています。海外では少量作って冷蔵庫に保存しておくことがあると聞きますが、そうするとだんだん変化しているのは確実なので、最初に作った状態から変わっているということは知っておいてほしいと思います。

デンプン糊の話をしてきましたが、次にこれを 10 年間発酵させて作る古糊についてお話したいと思います。 古糊はクルクルと巻いていく形態のもの、掛軸とか巻子 にのみ使われる接着剤です。使うときには、後ろから強 く刷毛を打ちこむ、打刷毛という方法を必ず合わせて使 います。古糊は接着力が弱いので、それをサポートする 目的で打刷毛をします。

作り方は、大きい甕に入れた後に、床下あるいは地下室で何年間も置いて作ります。保管中に表面にカビが被い、それをめくるとその下に古糊ができています(Fig. 5)。だいたい 10 年保管しますが、10 年以上経っているものを使う場合も、10 年経たないものを使う場合もあります。この 10 年というのは文化的な側面があります。古糊は、冬の一番寒い時期に炊いて甕に仕込みます。この仕事はその年に入った新人がやります。一般的に、日本では一人前にペーパー・コンサベーションができるようになるには 10 年かかると言われており、その 10 年後に自分が作った年の糊を分けてもらって独立するという文化になっています。ですので、だいたい 10 年で古糊を使うというサイクルと合致していたようです。

which the paste is applied, it is less likely to become warped or distorted. "Re-peelability" means that when you need to make another restoration or repair in the future, the paper applied with aged paste can easily be peeled off, whereas there are some cases in which the paper affixed with starch paste is hard to peel off or remove. In Japanese conservation and restoration, restoration or repair is often made once every hundred years, and the use of aged paste makes it easier for future conservators or restorers to peel off or remove the previous restoration or repairs. For these reasons, aged paste is used for mounting, and also especially for the lining of rolled items, such as hanging scrolls and hand scrolls.

Let me explain where these characteristics come from. The original starch paste has a molecular weight of over one million. We have aged paste, given to us by different conservation studios, but all of them have lower molecular weights than fresh one. Because of the lower molecular weight, the aged paste is more flexible, and the adhesiveness is weaker.

We took X-ray diffraction patterns of aged paste, and here you can see the crystallization of the aged paste. Starch granules of aged paste exhibit different diffraction patterns compared with the original paste. This analysis result showed the aged paste is retrograded starch. When you use retrograded starch, it is easier to remove in the next restoration. So, retrogradation is related to the high re-peelability of aged paste. Earlier, I mentioned the retrogradation and lower molecular weight. What is happening here is that the mold has started decomposing the starch, which reduces its molecular weight.

Figure 6 shows the characteristics of aged paste and its process. For making aged paste, starch is cooked in the wintertime, when the weather is cold. When it is cooked in winter, the first retrogradation starts. This results in the creation of areas that are still crystalized, as well as more amorphous areas, which are de-crystallized. The crystallized areas

Furunori (Aged Paste)







Fig. 5 Aged paste 古糊

では、古糊の性質について、もともとの小麦デンプン 糊と比較して説明したいと思います。まず色について、 古糊は保管中に少し色が付くことが多いです。あと、海 外の人には必ず問題になりますが、酸性度が上がりま す。粘度は低く、サラッとした糊になります。柔らかく なるとも言われています。また、乾いた後に、紙が暴れ たりとか、歪んだりする「引っ張り」が弱くなると言わ れています。最後に、次の修復の際に確実に剥がれます。 新糊の方は時として剥がれにくく、再修復で除去するの に苦労することがあります。日本の表具は、必ず100年 に 1 度程の頻度で全部解体して仕立て直すという作業 が入るので、そのときにこの古糊が使ってあることで、 確実に解体できるという保証になります。そういう性質 を合わせて表具の裏に使う、かつフレキシビリティが高 いということで、巻くものに使うというような伝統的な 流れになっただろうと思います。

この性質がどこから来ているかということを少し説明していきます。まず分子量が小さくなっています。もともとのデンプンの分子量は100万以上あります。複数の工房からご提供いただいた古糊を測ったところ、すべて分子量が小さくなっていることが明らかになりました。これが柔らかく仕上がり、接着力が弱まるといった性質につながっていると思います。

さきほどデンプンの結晶性の話をしましたが、X線回析を取るとそれぞれの古糊の結晶性を見ることができます。古糊は原料のデンプンの粒子と全く違うパターンを示します。古糊はこれによって、老化したデンプンであるというのが明らかになります。この性質は何に一番

cannot be decomposed by microorganisms, so they remain as they are. But the amorphous areas are decomposed by mold and other microorganisms. That process generates glucose, which is consumed by the microorganisms and decomposed into organic acids. The crystallized areas of the starch together with the organic acids constitute the aged paste. As a result of this process, the aged paste has somewhat higher acidity, which quite often becomes a problem, especially for non-Japanese conservators.

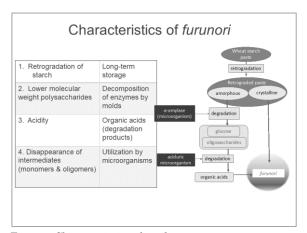


Fig. 6 Characteristics of aged paste 古糊の特徴

You can see the comparisons here between when two kinds of paper are affixed to one another, using either *nadebake*, which is a smoothing brush, or *uchibake*, a beating brush. The right bars represent where the beating brush was used (Fig. 7). The group on the left is when only water was used, the middle group is when regular paste was used, and the group on the right is when aged paste was used. As you can see, the wheat starch paste has a higher adhesiveness compared with the aged paste.

What I wanted to see were the differences between nadebake and uchibake. When you see wood pulp paper, using uchibake does not enhance adhesiveness. In the case of aged paste and other traditional Japanese papers, when a beating brush is used, the adhesiveness is nearly doubled, or more than doubled. The adhesiveness of aged paste is relatively weak, but the use of the beating brush enhances the

関係しているかと言うと、これだけ老化している材料を使って接着すると、次の時に必ず剥がれやすくなりますので、再剥離性の方に大きく影響していると思います。ここまでで、老化したということと、分子が小さくなっているということをお話ししました。では、なぜ分子が小さくなっているかというと、カビによってどんどんデンプンが分解されていって、低分子化していくという変化であることが確認されています。

これをまとめますと、古糊は寒い時期に仕込むので最初に老化が先行します。そうすると結晶化した部分と結晶化してない部分が生じます。この結晶化した部分は微生物が食べられないので、残っていきます。その一方で老化しなかった、結晶化しなかった部分はどんどん微生物に食べられて分解していきます。それによってグルコースが生じたりするのですが、そのグルコースが分解されたものが有機酸として残ります。その酸性の物質と結晶化して食べられなかった部分が合わさって、古糊として出来上がってくるということが分かっています(Fig. 6)。どうしても古糊は酸性のものなのですが、これを使うことに関してしばしば疑問が呈されるので、一応それに関連した話をしておきます。

これは打刷毛の効果を計測したグラフです (Fig. 7)。 打刷毛をした場合に、色々な種類の紙の組み合わせを接着して剥離強度を測定したデータです。打刷毛をしたのが右の縦棒で、撫刷毛のままの方が左の縦棒です。三つのグループは、それぞれ水だけでくっつけたもの、デンプン糊、古糊で接着したものです。一番左が水だけ、真ん中がデンプン糊、古糊が一番右側です。全体的にデンプン糊が一番よく付いて、古糊の接着力が弱いというのが見てとれるかと思います。

ここで見ていただきたいのは、同じ組み合わせにおける比較です。普通のパルプ紙の場合、打刷毛をしても接着力が逆に落ちているという結果が出ています。その他の和紙では、特に古糊を使用した際に倍以上に接着力が増えているのが分かるかと思います。

つまり、接着力自体はもともと古糊を使うと弱いのですが、その中でも打刷毛を使うことでかなり接着力が向上できる、ということが見てとれるかと思います。この時実際に何が起きているかを走査型電子顕微鏡(SEM)

adhesiveness of aged paste. When we observe what is happening here under a scanning electron microscope, in the case of wood pulp paper, we do not see much difference even after the beating brush was used. In the case of Japanese paper, especially those that contain filler, after *uchibake* was applied, the paper's fibers are fluffed because they adhered well. This makes it clear that the beating brush is effective when paper has longer fibers and also has some fillers.

I understand that people might be concerned about the acidity of aged paste, so I will present data about that (Fig. 8). Based on the production process for aged paste, we can now make artificial aged paste. We produced one with organic acid, and another one without organic acid. There are two groups in the middle; the one on the left is with organic acid, and the one on the right is without organic acid. As you can see, when organic acids are added, the adhesiveness becomes stronger. The reason the adhesiveness becomes stronger in paste made with organic acid may be related to hydrogen bonds. Also, for this experiment, we use paper that is more alkaline because it contains filler, so these may be reasons why the presence of organic acids enhances the adhesiveness of aged paste. In most cases, aged paste is diluted, and most of the organic acids evaporate. So, for these reasons, we think that there are merits to using aged paste, in terms of adhesiveness.

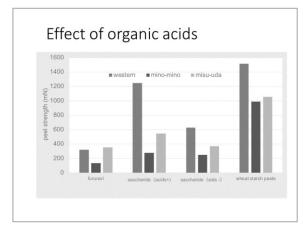


Fig. 8 Effect of organic acids 有機酸の効果

で見ると、パルプの場合は打刷毛をしても大して変わりはないのですが、日本の填料の入っている紙を使った場合は、繊維の浮きが見えます。打刷毛が、填料が入ってかつ繊維の長い和紙の場合は効果的だということが明らかになっています。

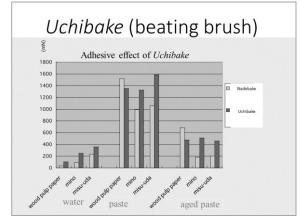


Fig. 7 Adhesive effect of *uchibake* 打刷毛の効果

最後に、酸性を結構気にされる方が多いので、酸性に ついてのデータを出しておきたいと思います。さきほど 紹介した古糊のスキームに従って、人工的に古糊を作る ことができるようになり、その時に有機酸を入れたもの と入れない中性のものと、2種類作ってみました。中央 のグラフです (Fig. 8)。明らかに有機酸が入っている方 が接着力が増します。これは有機酸が水素結合に関与し ているということ、もともと使っている紙が塡料の入っ たアルカリ性の紙なので、この二つの総合効果で有機酸 の入っている方が接着力が伸びるのだと思います。付け 加えておくと、古糊は原液ではなく希釈して使うことが 多く、また含まれている有機酸も揮発性、つまりあとに 残らないものが多いということです。古糊を使った後の 酸の影響を気にされる方が多いですが、以上のことか ら、古糊を使う方が使わない場合よりもメリットがある と考えています。

布海苔は、今までのデンプン糊とは異なり、海藻由来 (紅藻類)の接着剤です。干潮のときには潮の上に出て、満潮のときには完全に水の中に浸るというような場所 に生えています。この海藻は1年草で、真冬に新芽が出ます。1月から2月の寒い時期に新芽が出始めます。日本ではこの時期の布海苔は糊には使わず食べたりしま

Funori is different from the previous starch paste. It is derived from seaweed. The seaweed used for this paste is a type of red algae (Gloiopeltis), which grow in the intertidal zone, and appear when the tide is low; however, at full tide, it disappears underwater. It blooms annually; new buds grow at the coldest time of the year. Normally, new buds grow in either January or February. Funori collected in the wintertime is used for food, not for making paste. It grows until June, and then it develops spores and eventually it dies. Funori collected in April to June are used for seaweed paste. After collection, it is washed and put into a bleaching agent and bleached, and then dried on straw mats. After it is completely dry, it is sold. The kind of funori you see is already bleached, so it has a yellowish color (Fig. 9).

In historical records, we can trace the usage of funori in Japan back to the 8th century. Funori has been used in various ways. For example, as food, for mixing with plaster, for starching clothes, and as a light adhesive. For example, when you buy a writing brush, you can see that the hair of the brush is somewhat fixed, which is because it has been lightly coated with funori when you put the brush in water, the coating of funori dissolves away. Also, funori is used for keeping together bundles of hair or bundles of thread. Funori is also used for washing hair and clothes. There is no solid scientific evidence about using funori for washing, but I sense that it has some cleaning effects.

When we look at conservation in Japan, funori is used mainly for two purposes (Fig. 10). The first is temporary protection. Funori is used because it is reversible; that is, it is re-peelable when water is added later. The second is as a thickener. This is a starch paste applied to attach infill papers, and funori is added to starch paste as a thickener. The main use of funori in conservation is for temporary protection and as a thickener, but sometimes funori is used for consolidation. In Japan, for consolidation, we

す。だんだん育ってきて、6月ぐらいになると胞子を出して枯れます。枯れる直前の4月5月6月ぐらいに獲ったものが糊として使われます。獲ってきた海藻は、まず洗って、少し漂白剤につけて、ゴザの上で乾燥させます。そして乾燥したものが売られています。皆さんが見たことあるものは、おそらく薄い黄色になったものと思いますが、これは漂白をかけた後のものです(Fig. 9)。

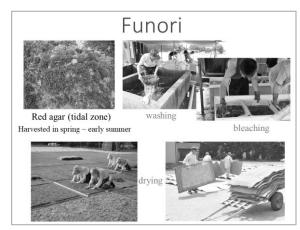


Fig. 9 Funori, seaweed paste 布海苔

用途については、日本では8世紀くらいから記録が残っており、様々なことに使われてきました。食べたり、漆喰を塗るときに混ぜたりします。あと、衣服とかの糊付けに使います。あとは軽い接着剤です。例えば、日本で作る筆の筆先は、使い始める前に水に入れるとサラッと溶ける軽い接着剤である程度まとめられているのですが、そのような用途で布海苔が使われています。糸をまとめるなど、フワッとまとめて、あとで水で洗い流せる接着剤として使われています。また、布海苔そのもので髪の毛を洗うとか、あるいは洋服を洗うということにも使われてきています。洗浄効果があるということで、このように使われてきていますが、実際の科学的な確認はされてはいません。しかし、使用感としては効果があるのではないかと感じます。

日本の文化財修復ではどう使うかというと、主に2種類です(Fig. 10)。一つが表面の養生です。これは必ず後で水で剥がせるということから使われます。次は、先ほどお話ししたような増粘剤です。補紙を貼るときのデンプン糊を増粘させるために布海苔を混ぜます。主にこの二つの用途で使用されていますが、時折剥落止めにも使われます。日本では、布海苔単体で剥落止めに使うこ

normally mix *funori* with animal glue or paste, rather than using *funori* alone. I have heard that outside Japan, *funori* is used by itself for consolidation, but in Japan, for consolidation, *funori* is normally mixed with animal glue or paste.

I would like to talk in more detail about funori. There are three kinds of algae used for funori in Japan. The first is called mafunori (Gloiopeltis tenax). "Ma" means "genuine" or "authentic." The second is called fukurofunori (Gloiopeltis furcata). The stem of fukurofunori is pouch-shaped, and that is why it is called "fukuro," which means "pouch" or "bag" in Japanese. Today, the main component of seaweed used for funori is fukurofunori. There are some mixtures of mafunori and fukurofunori, but as far as I know, what is sold overseas is mostly fukurofunori. The third kind is called hanafunori (Gloiopeltis complanata), but the seaweed commercially sold to make funori normally does not contain hanafunori.

The first characteristic of *funori* is that it has high water solubility. It does not gelatinize easily in chemically, and even though its gelatinization temperature is lower, it remains very smooth. It also functions as a surface-active agent. The main component of *funori* is polysaccharide sulfate, and its molecular weight is about one million but can be up to three million.

Let me talk about polysaccharides. Funoricontains two kinds of polysaccharides. The first kind is the agaroid chain, which is represented in agar; here, you can see the galactose, and there is this bridge-like structure over the galactose. The other kind, which might be more familiar to you, is the carrageenan chain. Sometimes it is replaced with sulfate groups.

Mafunori and fukurofunori have different characteristics. Also, the characteristics vary depending on the extraction temperatures. When the extraction temperature is higher, the molecular weight is higher, so the viscosity is also higher. When the extraction temperature is higher, normally the

とはなく、多くの場合、膠や糊と混ぜて使います。海外では結構布海苔単体で剥落止めに使うという話を聞くので、もしかしたら用途が違うのかなとは思いますが、 日本ではほとんど膠や糊と混ぜて使います。

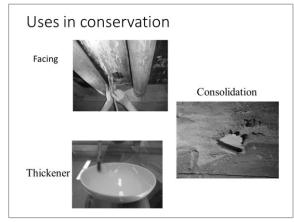


Fig. 10 Uses of *funori* in conservation 保存修復における布海苔の用途

布海苔の具体的な説明をしていきたいと思います。日本の周りに生えている布海苔は3種類あります。一つがマフノリです。「真(マ)」とは「本当の」といった意味を持ちます。二つ目にフクロフノリというのがあります。これは、茎がふくらんで袋のようになっているからフクロフノリといいます。今では布海苔の原料は主にフクロフノリになってきています。フクロフノリとマフノリが混ざっている場合もあるのですが、多くの場合ほぼフクロフノリで作られています。海外で流通している布海苔も、フクロフノリが多いのではないかと思います。最後のハナフノリはいわゆる工業用で、糊として使用するようなものには現在はあまり入っていません。

この布海苔の抽出物は、とても水に溶けやすいという性質があります。それからあまりゲル化しません。ゼリー状態にならないで、温度を下げていっても流動性があります。あとは界面活性剤的な動きをすることもあります。主成分は多糖類で、それも硫酸基で修飾された多糖で、分子量が 100 万から 300 万ぐらいではないかと言われています。

多糖類について詳しく説明すると、実は2種類の多糖が入っています。一つはアガロイドチェーンという寒天の仲間ですけれども、ガラクトースの上に、橋のように渡ったような構造を持っている種類のものです。もう一つが皆さんお馴染みかもしれませんけれども、カラギー

viscosity is also higher, but it does not necessarily mean that a high temperature is better. The highest viscosity appears somewhere around 75°C, so at conservation studios in Japan, the extraction temperature is adjusted depending on how the *funori* is going to be used. Sometimes, it is extracted at room temperature; sometimes, it is extracted at a higher temperature. The changes in the adhesiveness of *funori* are really small compared with the changes that we observe in starch paste, but the adhesiveness does change depending on the extraction temperature; around 75°C produces the highest adhesiveness.

I introduce an experience with two samples of funori sheets. One is extracted at room temperature and dried, and the other is extracted at a higher temperature and dried, and both are put into water. One hour later, the sample extracted at room temperature is dissolved in water, but the other has some undissolved fragments remaining. As I said earlier, funori is used for facing. When you use funori extracted at room temperature, and later water is added to it, the paste dissolves more easily. But, when you use funori extracted at a higher temperature, you might feel some stickiness left behind when you apply water to remove the paper. So, you probably need to remove funori more carefully when it has been extracted at higher temperature.

Finally, I would like to talk about how to use *funori* outside Japan. When *funori* is extracted using hard water, it exhibits different characteristics. An opaque film may appear in hard water and this opaque white film does not dissolve in water. If you want to extract and use *funori* as Japanese conservators too, make sure that you use pure water, such as destilled water.

Next, I would like to move on to animal glue, or nikawa¹. In Japan, we have used a stick type of animal ナンチェーンというものです。カラギーナンチェーンも部分的に硫酸基に変わったり変わらなかったりします。マフノリとフクロフノリでは性質が異なり、また抽出される温度によっても異なります。温度によって分子量が大きくなり、粘度も高くなります。高い温度で煮出すにつれて、高い粘度になりますが、高ければいいということでもなく、75℃前後で結構濃い粘度のものが作れます。実際の現場では目的に合わせて室温で抽出するか、高温で煮出すか使い分けています。接着力も多少変わってきます。デンプン糊に比べるとすごく小さな変化なの

で、すごく影響があるというわけではありませんが、

75℃前後が一番接着力が高くなります。

室温で抽出した布海苔と、炊き出して作った布海苔を 乾かした後に同時に水の中に漬けると、1 時間後には室 温抽出は溶解していますが、炊いた布海苔は溶け残りが あります。養生に使ったあと水に溶けるかというと、室 温抽出は割と溶けて除去しやすいですが、炊いた場合は 溶けてベタベタするだけで残存があるため、布海苔取り という作業して積極的に取らなければいけないという ことが分かるかと思います。

最後に、布海苔を海外で使う場合の注意をお話ししたいと思います。布海苔は硬水で炊き出すと性質が変わります。硬水で炊いたものは白濁した膜になってしまいます。しかも白濁したフィルムだと、水にほとんど溶けません。ですので、海外で布海苔を日本のようなイメージで使いこなすとしたら、純水を使って炊き出して欲しいなと思います。

次に膠の話をしたいと思います。日本ではこの 150 年くらい和膠 (わにかわ) と言われる、「三千本」という種類の膠が使われてきました。三千本膠は、日本では明治維新の後、19世紀頃から使われてきたものです。19世紀以降、日本画を描くとき、あるいは修復するときには、三千本膠やその仲間である京上膠を使うことが多かったのですが、これらが主に日本の膠として認識されてきたものになります。ですが、数年前に、ついにこの膠の生産が中止になりました。その結果、今、日本ではこの

¹ The terminology concerning animal glue conforms to the leaflet "Basic Knowledge about Animal Glue." http://nikawalabs.main.jp/index/wp-content/uploads/2018/06/Basic_Knowledge_about_Animal_Glue_English_download_ver_by_Nikawa_Labs_20180127-1.pdf

glue, called *sanzenbon* for the last hundred fifty years. Wanikawa, which is domestic animal glue such as *sanzenbon* and *kyojo-nikawa*, started to be used since the mid- or late 19th century and is used mostly for Japanese painting and conservation work. The production of *wanikawa* stopped several years ago. Now, in Japan, there are two options left, which are to use industrial animal glue or a reproduction of old animal glue.

One of the key differences is the raw materials that are used. Wanikawa uses cowhide that has been dredged with lime. For industrial animal glue, chromium tanned leather is used. For the production of industrial animal glue, there are additional processes, such as de-chroming. After de-chroming, lime is added and heated, and so the protein contents that are extracted are quite different. There are some adjustments, such as bleaching, so that the color of the industrial animal glue is relatively light. The characteristics of protein produced in industrial animal glue are different. The forms of the side chains in this protein are different from those in domestic animal glue.

Industrial animal glue is more commonly used for conservation in Japan, but these days, we also have classical animal glue available, which is a reproduction of a classical glue produced before the 18th century. The production of classical animal glue does not involve the use of lime, you shave off the hair or the fur of rawhide, and then put the hide in water and boil it for a long time. When the protein is extracted in this way—the classical style—it differs from the proteins produced or extracted in the other two ways. But we believe that restorations done in Japan in old times probably used this type of classical animal glue.

In relation to animal glue, let me talk about some things to keep in mind, some important points regarding the restoration of East Asian paintings. Unlike western paintings, such as oil paintings, タイプの膠が手に入らなくなっていて、工業的な膠を使 うか、あるいは昔の膠を復元して使うかという選択肢に なってきています。

大きな違いとして、まず原料が違います。膠というのは、石灰をまぶした牛皮を原料としています。工業的な膠では、材料は工業的に使うクロムなめし皮のハギレを原料としています。そうすると、抽出する際に、脱クロムと言ってクロムを取る作業が一つ行程として入ります。その後に石灰をまぶして、さらに加熱するという工程を踏むので、抽出されるタンパク質の成分がだいぶ変わってきます。出来上がった後に、漂白剤を入れるなど色の調整もするので、色は割と薄いです。その一方でタンパク質の構造としても、側鎖といってメインの構造部分がだいぶ変わってくるため、性質が今まで使ってきたものとかなり違うことになります。

現在の日本の修復では、主に工業的な膠が使われることが多いですが、最近復元的な膠を作れるようになり、そちらを使う場合もあります。18世紀以前の作り方の復元の一つに、石灰をまぶさずに生の皮の毛のある部分を刃物で削いで、コトコトとポトフみたいに煮出す方法があります。この方法で抽出される成分はまた異なりますが、おそらく日本の文化財に使われていたのは、この作り方で作られていたものではないかなと思います。

東洋絵画を修復する上で気をつけておいていただけ ればなと思うことを、膠に絡めてお話をしたいと思いま す。いわゆる油彩画やテンペラ、フレスコと違って、日 本の顔料は、膠で混ぜて塗っただけのものになります。 皆さん、膠を混ぜて塗ると思っているのではと思います が、描くときには1回練りつけて塗るという作業をして います。この時に何が起きているかというと、顔料を膠 液とよく混ぜて指先で皿をこするようにずっと攪拌し て水分を蒸発させつつ濃縮させて、顔料1粒1粒を膠で コーティングさせたような状態を作り出します。顔料に 付いた膠がすごく濃度が高い状態なので、顔料同士が点 で接着していく感じになります (Fig. 11)。その一方で、 ただ混ぜただけ場合は、こちらの下の写真になります が、全体的にとろっとキャラメリゼのように膠がかかっ た状態になります。こちらの方が乱反射がおきにくい状 態ですので、色としては全体に濡れ色っぽくなる、色が しずんだ感じになるのが分かるかと思います。

frescos, or tempera, Japanese or East Asian paintings use pigments that are kneaded with animal glue. You might think that pigments are only mixed with animal glue, but they are kneaded together. We continue stirring pigments with animal glue in things like rubbing dishes and evaporate the water of the animal glue solution to be concentrated. What is happening here is that each grain of pigment is coated with the animal glue solution. Because the animal glue that is coating the pigments is highly concentrated, two pigments are adhered on a point (Fig. 11). When pigments and animal glue are not kneaded but only mixed, the animal glue covers whole pigments. Because it produces less light scattering, it produces a darker color impression.

Traditionally, Japanese paintings prefer a brighter representation of colors. This is the reason why kneaded paint is preferred. When you try to do consolidation in conservation work, you often end up just mixing pigments and an animal glue solution. When we restore Japanese paintings, it brings a darker color impression. Especially when you do consolidation on white areas, the change is greater than on colored areas. It becomes more transparent and the brightness of the colors will be lost. What I would like to bring to your attention is that when you use animal glue for the restoration of Japanese paintings, it changes the impression of the color, normally darkening it or reducing the brightness of the original colors.

We do have a demonstration of how to mix, before the demonstration, do you have any other questions?

- Q: I just want to ask about the aged paste, furunori. Is there ever any concern about mold growth in its usage? Is that ever a consideration afterwards, that there will be some molds that will grow?
- A: Generally speaking, no mold grows

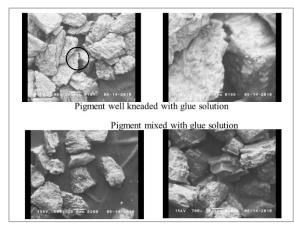


Fig. 11 SEM images of pigments with glue solution 膠と混ぜた顔料の SEM 画像

日本画は色の発色・明るさを大事にしていたので、こういうふうに練って点接着させることで、明るい色を維持したのだと思います。ただし、修復の際に剥落止めをしようとすると、必ず混ぜただけの状態になってしまいます。こういうことから「日本画の修復では修復をすると色味が暗くなる」と言われています。特に白い色について、ものすごく明るく発色していたのが透明になってしまうとか、あるいはいろんな鮮やかさが一気に沈んでしまうというようなことがあります。白い色は特に問題になりやすいです。顔料に関して、日本画の修復をする際、膠を入れると色味が深く色が濃くなる傾向があるというのは、知っておいてほしいと思います。

実際にどうやって練りつけるかを見てもらう前に、全体として質問があればお受けします。

- Q: 古糊についてお聞きします。糊にカビが残っていて、使用後にカビが生えてしまう恐れはないのでしょうか。
- A: 生えないと言われています。むしろ古糊は使った後もカビが生えにくい種類だと言われています。なぜならカビが食べる成分はもう古糊の中からなくなっていて、上に生えているあのカビは、カビの死骸なので、それを取ってしまうともう栄養がない状態になっているので。ただ、時折生える場合もあります。

afterwards. It is said that aged paste is less susceptible to mold growth once it has been made. During the 10 years of fermentation, the components that are edible to molds have already been consumed, so there is no part that molds can consume. What is left on the top of the aged paste, the black part, is probably the remains of the mold, and we use the lower part of the black part where no nutrition is left. But sometimes, mold grows on aged paste.



Fig. 13 Lecture 講義



Fig. 12 Lecture 講義



Fig. 14 Demonstration 実演

3 Paper Basics

紙の基礎

Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties KATO Masato

You may all be paper conservators, but did you study or have classes on paper basics, especially on a scientific approach to paper basics, in your schools? Today's lecture will be more of a review for you on paper basics. In addition to that, I would like to introduce comparative perspectives on Japanese papers.

First, I would like to define paper. We have the Japanese Industrial Standards (JIS), and paper is defined in the JIS. The main point extracted from JIS and the Concise Oxford English Dictionary is basically that paper is a thin sheet made from fibers. The key point here is that the fibers are not woven or knitted.

However, when we try to examine the definition of washi, which refers to Japanese paper, we find that it does not have a solid definition. First, although washi is often translated as Japanese paper, is washi really Japanese? Let us take a look at the definitions by JIS and from one of the most commonly used Japanese language dictionaries. These definitions basically say, "paper made in Japan, paper that has been developed in Japan." However, these definitions include some notes stating that, recently, some washi are being made of chemical pulp and, also recently, being made by machines. With this definition, we cannot really have a clear definition that includes the paper used in your textbook pages, which is also referred to as washi. In Japan, there are many kinds of paper that cannot be distinguished as to whether these are Japanese papers made in Japan, or made in the West, or western-style papers made in Japan. With regard to Japanese banknotes, how do they feel compared to the banknotes in your country? Australian banknotes are completely made of plastic, whereas American 東京文化財研究所

加藤 雅人

皆さん、ペーパーコンサベーションの方、あるいはペーパーレストレーションの方ですが、学校で紙の材料のこと、特に科学的なことは、習いましたでしょうか。今日は、復習を兼ねつつ、皆さんが習ったことと比べながら、日本の紙の特徴、和紙の特徴について話をしていきたいと思います。

最初に紙の定義をしておきます。日本では、産業規格というのがあり、そこでまず紙というものが定義されています。また、コンサイス・オックスフォード・イングリッシュ・ディクショナリーの説明と合わせて要約すると、繊維から作った薄いシートということになります。要点は、編んだり織ったりしていないということです。つまり糸にして、それを編んだり織ったりすると布になるのですが、そういうことをしていないということです。

では和紙はどうか、和紙という定義を見ていくと、実 は意外に難しいです。英語でジャパニーズペーパーと訳 されることもありますが、本当にジャパニーズペーパー かという問題があります。日本での定義はどうなってい るかというと、やはり産業規格とか、国語辞典である広 辞苑では日本に特有の紙とか、日本で発展してきた紙と あります。その後に付け足しとして、機械で漉くという 説明も入っています。こう言ってしまうと本当に、今の 皆さんが持っているコピー用紙と、何が違うのか分から ないわけですね。実際に日本には、和紙、ジャパニーズ ペーパーだかウエスタンペーパーだかよく分からない 紙がいっぱいあります。皆さん日本のお札の紙幣は、も う手に取りましたよね。皆さんの国のお札と比べてどう ですか。例えばオーストラリアはプラスチックですよ ね。アメリカは相変わらず、リネンやヘンプで作ってい ると思います。日本のお札は和紙がルーツですが、機械 で作っています。お札や新聞紙は、日本のものと欧米の もので随分雰囲気が違うと思います。私がアメリカに行 って、新聞紙を初めて持ったとき、お札もそうでしたが、

banknotes are made from linen or hemp fibers. Japanese banknotes, by contrast, are made of washi, but are made by machines. I mentioned that the papers used for newspapers, in Japan are quite different. Similarly, banknotes in Japan differ from their western counterparts. When I first visited the US and had a chance to actually acquire and feel the newspaper prints in the United States, I thought the paper was much thicker. Likewise, American banknotes are thicker than Japanese ones, and also felt fluffier. Western-style paper produced in Japan has a history of over 100 years. The technique of producing western-style paper was introduced to Japan in the late 19th century and has its own evolution and characteristics. We cannot really say that western-style paper made in Japan is exactly the same as the wood pulp paper available in the West.

To avoid further confusion in this talk when I say washi, the word will now refer to the kind of Japanese paper that you would imagine. For both traditional washi and western-style modern paper, the process of papermaking are actually similar, and remained quite the same for the past 2,000 years. Let me just go through the steps.

The raw materials for paper are plant fibers. Its main component is cellulose. The molecules of cellulose are said to be long, straight, and hard. Thousands of cellulose molecules are combined into what we call cellulose microfibrils. Cellulose microfibrils are aligned in many different directions and then make up the plant fibers. As you know, plant fibers have this lumen structure, which has an empty space in the center. This diagram shows the construction of a fiber (Fig. 1). A layer of microfibrils aligned vertically and then the next layer, for example, horizontally or aligned, positioned like a mesh or diagonally, make up this tube-like lumen structure. These lumens or tubes are then joined together, attached to each other by the work of lignin. We cannot

分厚くてふわふわしている感じがしてびっくりしました。コピー用紙のようなウエスタンスタイルのペーパーも、19世紀の末に日本に製法が欧米から入ってきて、100年以上日本で発展しているので、欧米のものとは全く同じとは言えない紙になっています。

このことを細かく話すと混乱していくので、ここではジャパニーズペーパーといった場合には、日本の伝統的な紙のことを話すようにします。伝統的な和紙と、そこにあるコピー用紙つまり皆さんの国のいわゆるモダンペーパーが、作り方は全然違うかというと、大まかなところは、もう 2000 年以上前から変わっていないのは、ご存じだと思います。それを順番に見ていきましょう。

原料はもともと植物の繊維です。主成分はセルロース です。セルロースの分子は、長く真っすぐで、固い分子 と言われているのですが、それが数千本ほど固まってで きたのが、セルロースミクロフィブリルという、帯のよ うなものです。これがいろんな形で並んで、植物の繊維 を作っていきます。ご存じのとおり、植物の繊維はチュ ーブのような形をしているわけですが、これがそのチュ ーブの構造を解剖した図です (Fig. 1)。セルロースミク ロフィブリルを、横に並べ、縦に並べ、メッシュのよう にして、周りに壁を作ってできたチューブが1本の繊維 です。そのチューブ同士を、リグニンという接着剤でく っつけて、木材になっています。われわれが紙を作ると きは、木材の塊では紙を作れないので、この繊維の1本 1本の状態まで、戻す必要があります。1本1本剥がす ために、繊維と繊維をくっつけている接着剤のリグニン を、何とかして取るということが一番の目的になってい きます。ミクロフィブリル同士をくっつけているのは、 へミセルロースというものが多いです。

化学的な式ですが、セルロースというのは、グルコースからできていますよ、そして長いチェーンになっていきますよというのが、この図です(Fig. 2)。早川典子さんの授業で、グルコースがくっついて、デンプンになるという話がありましたが、セルロースとデンプンは、基本的に同じくグルコースからできています。デンプンになるのは α グルコースですし、セルロースになるのは β グルコースです。どちらも植物の中で、光合成でできます。同じグルコースですが、 β グルコースは自分の体を

make paper out of wood blocks, and thus we need to break down wood blocks into the fiber level. The key objective of papermaking at this point is to remove lignin, which bonds the different fibers. What bonds the microfibrils, on the other hand, is more the work of hemicellulose.

This is the chemical structure of cellulose (Fig. 2). As Ms. Hayakawa talked about in her lecture, starch is basically made of glucose. Cellulose is also made of glucose; however, starch consists of α -glucose, whereas cellulose is made of β -glucose, and either way, α -glucose and β -glucose are both produced by photosynthesis. Plants use β -glucose to build their own body structures, whereas starch is made of α -glucose is used for storing energy.

In Japanese paper conservation, we use paper, in other words cellulose, and paste which is made of starch. As you can see, starch and cellulose are quite compatible. Things made of glucose contain a large amount of hydroxyl groups (—OH). The presence of many OH groups have some significance. In the presence of hydroxyl groups, this material is quite hydrophilic; it works well with water. There is also a chain, consisting of many carbons or Cs, that is lipophilic and works well with oil. From this chemical characteristic, we can understand that paper is quite compatible with both water and oil.

Let me return to the topic of raw materials. The slide shows a list of raw materials that can be used for paper (Fig. 3). As you know, paper was invented in China. Have you ever had a chance to see paper produced in the BC era? I had a chance to actually examine paper produced in China in the 2nd century BC. It was a fragment, but it retained some ink on it. It was thought to be part of a map. What I saw was only a fragment, but it was still in good condition. The paper produced in that time period is assumed to be made of hemp. As for the types of hemp, we have cannabis, flax, and ramie. When the technique of papermaking was brought to Japan from China, the

作る構造体の原料となるセルロースになります。 α グルコースからできたデンプンは、エネルギーを一時的に蓄えておく方法として使っています。

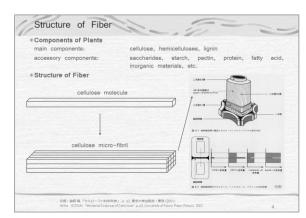


Fig. 1 Structure of fiber 繊維の構造

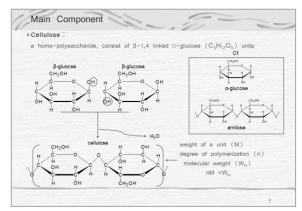


Fig. 2 Structure of cellulose セルロースの構造

日本の紙文化財の修復というと、紙つまりセルロースにデンプン糊を使いますが、どちらも、もともと同じものということもあり、非常に親和性が高いのが分かると思います。もう一つ、覚えておいていただきたいのが、グルコースからできたものは、・OHが非常に多いです。・OHがあとあと大きな意味を持ってきます。・OHは、水と仲がよく、非常に水となじみがいいです。一方で、真ん中の部分はCのチェーンがいっぱいつながっており、ここは油と仲がいいです。ですので、紙は水も吸い込むし油も吸い込むということが、化学的にも分かります。原料の話に戻りますが、その繊維を植物のどこから取ってくるかというのを、まとめたのがこの図になります(Fig. 3)。ご存じのとおり、紙というのは中国で2000年以上前に発明されています。皆さん、紀元前の紙を見たことがありますか。私は中国で紀元前2世紀の紙を見

Japanese began with making paper with cannabis. In Japan, cannabis was mostly used. Historical evidence suggests that the Japanese started to explore other possible materials aside from cannabis. By the 8th century, paper using *kozo*, or paper mulberry, became a more common form of paper available in Japan. These materials are called bast fibers.

Papermaking was then brought to Europe eventually, where, at that time, linen or cannabis taken from rags were mostly used for papermaking. The consumption of paper then started to increase, and people started using wood pulps. There were also other kinds of paper made from other materials. In Europe, there was cotton paper; as the supply of hemp began to decrease, Europeans started to explore and experiment with other materials that were available in European colonies—for example, abaca or sisal, among others. In Japan, people also experimented with materials other than *kozo*, and in East Asian regions, rice straws have been used. Bamboo has been used in China, but in Japan, we do not have much bamboo paper.

Here is a list of the three major fibers used for washi (Fig. 4). There are no statistics on this matter, but I believe that over 90 percent of washi is made from *kozo*. *Kozo*, which is translated as paper mulberry in English, is indeed a family of mulberry. It has been said that the varieties called *Broussonetia kazinoki* and *Broussonetia papyrifera* were interbred in Japan. This interbreeding occurred naturally, and the proportions of these two species varied depending on the region. There were cases of reversion such that the resulting plants began to present more primitive characteristics of the species. There are many varieties of *kozo* available in Japan.

Paper makers normally choose the kind of *kozo* that they prefer, and then interbreed the tree with other varieties of *kozo*. In this way, new variations of *kozo* trees are produced in Japan. The trees referred to as *kozo* in Japan have different variations, which

せていただいたことがあります。地図の一部だと言われているもので、小さい断片になっていたのですが、墨と思われる線が書いてあり、ちゃんとメディアとしての役割をまだ保っていてすごいなと思った覚えがあります。その頃の紙というのは、おそらく麻だと思われます。麻としては、アサ(大麻)、亜麻、苧麻などがあります。日本に中国大陸から紙が伝わったときには、やはりアサを中心とした紙でした。日本の場合は、亜麻や苧麻ではなく多くはアサが使われていました。中国同様に麻を使った紙が日本でしばらく作られていたと、ずっと信じられていたのですが、よくよく科学的に分析していくと、日本では早々にアサ以外の違う材料を探し始めたようです。8世紀の紙には、既に楮というものを使った紙が主流になっていきました。このようなものが靭皮繊維といわれるものです。

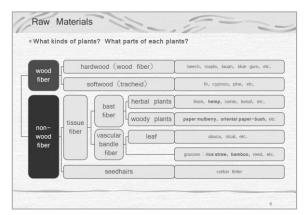


Fig. 3 Raw materials of paper 紙の原料

その後、ヨーロッパのほうにも紙が伝わり、長らくリネン(亜麻)とかヘンプ(大麻)の襤褸を紙の原料としていたと思われます。その後、大量に紙を消費するようになり、木材パルプ、木材原料が増えていくことになります。それ以外の原料を使用する紙として、ヨーロッパではコットンペーパーが有名だと思います。また、ヨーロッパでは木材ペーパーが発見されるまで、襤褸が枯渇してきたために、各植民地で様々な植物を探し、アバカやサイザルアサなども使っていました。日本でもいろんな原料を探し、楮以外にも幾つか使っています。東アジアでは米の稲わらが昔から使われています。中国では竹も有名ですが、日本では竹の紙はあまり見ません。

日本の和紙で見られる植物を、有名なものを三つご紹介します(Fig. 4)。統計的に数えたわけではありません

are called "maso," "aoso," and "akaso." The syllable "so" refers to kozo, whereas "ma" means genuine, "ao" is blue, and "aka" is red. The words "aoso" and "akaso" therefore refer to blue kozo and red kozo, respectively. There are different variations of kozo present in Japan. Each paper maker chooses the kind of tree that he or she prefers. Even with the same kind of kozo trees, depending on how they are planted, whether on the sunny side or shady side of a mountain, the plants may exhibit different characteristics. Of those planters that I interviewed, some said that they would plant their kozo trees in very windy places. The reason why they plant trees in windy places is that trees try to resist the wind and, in the process, eventually produce new characteristics for the fiber.

We also have kozo trees produced in Thailand and in Paraguay. With regard to both Thailand and Paraguay, people brought Japanese kozo trees from Japan to these countries, and thus in terms of DNA, these trees are supposed to be the same as those in Japan. The reason why kozo trees were brought to Thailand is because Thailand offers less expensive labor, and therefore, if the kozo trees are cultivated there, the fibers will also be cheaper. Because the climate of Thailand is warm, the trees grow very fast. Basically, paper producers were very pleased that the labor there was less costly than in Japan, and thus the production of trees in Thailand became bigger than that in Japan. However, problems began to emerge specifically, foxing. At first, the reason for foxing was not clear; people then examined these foxing spots, which were then determined to be due to resins derived from kozo trees. Whereas kozo trees grown in Japan do not produce that much resin to have spots, the ones that grew in Thailand started to produce resins.

When these spots started to appear, paper makers use some chemicals to remove these resins. Another possible solution was that because these resins appear once the tree matures, then to prevent the resins from

が、日本の和紙の 90 数パーセント以上は楮でできているのではと思います。英語でペーパーマルベリーという名前が付いているとおり、クワ科の植物です。長らく楮というのは、Broussonetia kazinoki というのと、Broussonetia papyrifera という二つの種が、日本の中で出会って自然に交配した植物だと言われてきました。自然に交わってできたものなので、微妙に混じり方が違ったりとか、あるいは先祖返りもあったりなど、いろんなバージョンがあります。



Fig. 4 Raw materials for washi 和紙の原料

紙を作る職人さんが、自分の好きな木を採ってきて、また植えるわけです。なので、その職人さんが好きな木を、たくさん交配させていくので、同じような木ができていきます。そのため、楮といっても、日本の中だけで、マソ、アオソ、アカソなど、幾つか種類があります。「ソ」が楮という意味で、「マ」は本物という意味です。アオという名前の通り青っぽい楮、赤っぽい楮など、いろんな名前が付いています。このなかで、どんな楮を使うかは、漉き手によって違います。あるいは、同じ種類の楮であったとしても、山の日の当たる側に植えるのか、日陰側に植えるのかで、全く違う育ち方をします。私がインタビューした中では、わざわざ風の強い所に植えるという人もいました。風が吹くと、それに耐えようとするので、偏って成分ができたりとか、繊維の性質がちょっと変わったりします。

この極端な例として、タイで作った楮とか、パラグアイで作った楮があります。これは、日本の楮を持って行って、向こうで植えたというものなので、DNAは日本の楮と全く同じものです。なぜタイに持って行ったかというと、最初は労働者の賃金が安いので、向こうで育て

being generated, the trees would have to be cut down while they were still young. With either treatment, however, what was produced was very weak paper. First of all, the chemical treatment weakens the strength of fibers, and secondly, with the use of very young tree fibers, the sturdiness of the fibers is weak from the beginning. Thus, either way, foxing or spots were able to be removed, but very weak papers were produced as a result.

I had opportunities to inspect the webpages of paper dealers, and some papers sold as washi for conservation actually used Thailand *kozo*. For the reasons I mentioned, I do not really recommend these papers. When you purchase washi, what you should expect is its sturdiness and for fewer chemicals to have been used, but as I explained, washi made from Thai *kozo* does not have these good characteristics. This is the reason why I do not recommend that kind of washi. You can go ahead and purchase Thai *kozo* washi, but just use them for decorating your interior or for lamp shades, or as wrapping paper.

Japanese kozo has been considered a natural hybrid of Broussonetia kazinoki and Broussonetia papyrifera, but in recent years, there have been papers that argue otherwise that there is another new species involved in this hybridization. The aforementioned scientific names, by the way, use Latin-derived language and did not exist traditionally in Japan. The person responsible for these names was Philipp Franz Balthasar von Siebold. He was a German who worked as a medical officer of the Militia of the Netherlands. Edo period Japan was a secluded country and had contacts or exchanges with only a limited number of foreign countries. von Siebold was sent to Japan as an army surgeon of the Netherlands, and during his stay, he collected Japanese materials and had many specimens of natural history in Japan. In that process, he named many different kinds of natural resources in Japan. However, his stay in Japan was relatively short, and thus there were some たら原料費が安くなるのではということで、向こうで育 てようとしたわけです。そこで、タイで植えてみたとこ ろ、暖かいため早く育ちました。労働賃金が安い上に、 たくさん採れるということで、業者も最初は喜んだので すが、後から問題が見えてきました。それは、フォクシ ングです。最初はなぜか分からなかったのですが、よく よく調べてみたら、これは楮に由来する樹脂成分でし た。日本で育った楮は樹脂が出ないのですが、タイのよ うな温暖なところで育てると樹脂を作ってしまったよ うです。

では、どのようにフォクシングが出ないようにするかというと、樹脂を抜くために強い薬品をたくさん使うというのが、一つの解決方法としてあります。もう一つ、樹脂は育ちきった木でできてしまうので、若いうちに収穫してしまうという方法があります。これらの結果、フォクシングはなくなったのですが、紙自体がちょっと弱くなってしまいました。理由は、ケミカルをたくさん使えば、繊維がダメージ受けるので弱くなります。また成熟していない繊維は育ち切ってないので弱いです。その結果として、紙も弱くなりました。どちらの方法を取ったとしても、フォクシングは解消されたのですが、弱い紙になってしまいました。

私はいろんなペーパーコンサベーションのディーラ ー、ショップのホームページを調べたのですが、幾つか のお店でコンサベーション用の和紙として売っている 和紙が、タイの楮と書いてありました。今ご説明した理 由から、私としてはあまりお薦めできません。おそらく 皆さんが和紙に求めていることは、丈夫さや化学薬品を あまり使っていないということだと思いますが、そうい ういいところが消されてしまっているからです。タイ楮 の和紙は、もちろん買っていただいてもいいのですが、 インテリアとか照明とか、ラッピングペーパーとか、そ ういうことに使っていただいたほうがいいと思います。 楮について、ナチュラルハイブリッドと説明しました が、今までは Broussonetia kazinoki と Broussonetia papyrifera の、二つのハイブリッドだと言われていまし た。ところが、数年前にそれは違うのではないかという 発表をした論文が出てきました。ラテン的な学名の付け 方は、もちろん日本に昔からあったものではありませ

ん。この辺の植物の名前を命名したのは、オランダ軍の

confusion or errors on his part. Some Japanese botanists visited the Netherlands where some of these plant samples collected by von Siebold are still present. The botanists concluded that what von Siebold named as *Broussonetia kazinoki* was actually *Broussonetia monoica*. Therefore, it has become more of an academic consensus that *kozo* is a natural hybrid of *Broussonetia papyrifera* and *Broussonetia monoica*.

As I have said, *kozo* is the most dominant, prevalent source of fibers for washi. The term *kozo* actually refers to the source of the paper. The Japanese translation for paper is kami. The syllable "so" that refers to the origin or raw material for something is added and the term becomes "kamiso." There is also some kind of liaison, such as flux of pronunciation. In the first step of the sound change, is "kamso," wherein the "I" sound was dropped. The "M" sound is then transformed to the "U" sound, and the term turns "kauso". In Japanese phonetics, "AU" is normally pronounced as "O", thus it turns "koso." When you trace the history of the sound change here, the kozo returns to this original form, which is "kamiso," or the source of paper.

I also introduce *mitsumata* and *gampi*. Although not as predominant as *kozo*, they are used in some Japanese washi. You may see some scientific names in parentheses, meaning that there are some academic debates over the naming or the nature of these trees. *Gampi* trees have many different subspecies or subkinds, but it is said that people were able to make use of only very limited variations of *gampi*.

Now, let me talk about how to extract fibers. I have a list of traditional Asian methods that I believe are quite similar to, or retain, original papermaking techniques (Fig. 5). Physical methods and chemical methods alike have been used since the olden times. As for chemical treatments, they normally involve cooking with alkali, although the source of alkaline material is different depending on the region. For

医師として働いていたドイツ人のシーボルトという方 です。江戸時代に、日本は限られた国とだけ国交をもち、 交易などをしており、その数少ない国の一つがオランダ でした。シーボルトはオランダ軍医として、オランダの 商船で一緒に日本に来て、日本に何回か、あるいは何日 間か滞在しており、その間にいろんな日本の自然のもの や日本の文物、今でいう博物学的な調査をしています。 そのときに、こういったものも名付けていきました。滞 在が短かったせいもあるとは思いますが、随分取り間違 いもあったようです。数年前に日本の植物学者が、オラ ンダの博物館が所有しているシーボルトが集めた植物 標本の調査を行いました。その結果、シーボルトが Broussonetia kazinoki と付けたものは、実は Broussonetia monoica だったと結論付けました。今で は Broussonetia papyrifera と Broussonetia monoica のハイブリッドが楮じゃないかというのが、学説として 優勢になってきています。

先ほど、楮が日本の紙の材料としては、メジャーだという話をしましたが、「楮」という名前は、「ザ・紙のもと」という意味です。紙「kami」と、もとになるもの、原料という意味で素「so」という言葉が付き「kami-so」になりました。これが使っているうちに、音便が起きていきます。最初に「i」が省略されて、「kamso」になります。続いて「m」が「u」に変化して「kauso」になります。この「au」は、日本では「o」にだんだん変化していくので「koso」になり、最後に「kozo」です。なので、楮という名前は、実はもともと The paper material という意味になります。

他に出てくる繊維は、三椏、雁皮です。量的にはそれほど多くはありませんが、日本で見られる特徴的な紙ということで挙げました。学名が二つ書いてありますが、これもいまだに論争が続いている、名前の付け方がちょっと違うということで、名前が分かれています。雁皮にも、キガンピ、コガンピ、イヌガンピなど、幾つか種類があるのですが、実際に使うことができた雁皮は数少ないと言われています。

今まで原料植物を見てきましたが、それらの植物から 繊維を取り出す方法についてご説明します (Fig. 5)。伝 統的なアジアの方法と書いてあるものが、もともとの方 example, the source materials for alkali in Japan and China are different. In the case of China, alkali is taken from limestone, whereas in Japan, it is taken mostly from wood ashes. Furthermore, modern pulping for chemical pulp involves alkaline cooking, and although different chemicals are used, the idea of using alkali to process fibers is the same. The key difference is the strength of the alkali. Alkali used in traditional methods is weaker alkali derived from natural sources, whereas in western modern pulping, the alkali used is a more industrial, stronger alkali. I mentioned that in China, bamboo is used for papermaking; however, bamboo is very difficult to pulp. Therefore, to process bamboo trees, lime is used. In addition, some kind of biological decomposition is also involved.

Now, let me talk about processing fibers. You can make paper with fibers alone, but if you want to have a whiter product, then you need to perform bleaching. The brownish color of paper comes from lignin, and therefore, here, you will need to treat the lignin. There are two methods of bleaching: to whiten the lignin, and therefore retain the lignin, or to remove the lignin, which is the source of the color. Modern or western pulping chemical agents are often used for bleaching, but in Japan or China, there are other methods of bleaching (Fig. 6). One traditional method of bleaching is to use sunlight. Oxidation-reduction reaction is used for bleaching, for example, sun bleaching uses ultraviolet light to promote the reaction. There are some regional differences in how light bleaching is performed, but in some regions, plant fibers are placed on snow. As you well know, much reflection of UV light occurs on snow, which results in a greater bleaching effect. In the Mino region, fibers are placed in the shallow part of a river. The process of clearing impurities involves soaking of the fibers in water and exposure of the fibers to sunlight.

When you think of the aging of paper, it usually involves discoloration or change of color. Normally, the

法に近い方法だと思います。物理的、化学的な方法が昔 から使われていました。化学的なものを使うときには、 大体アルカリで煮込むのですが、そのアルカリの採り方 が同じアジアの中でも中国と日本で少し異なります。中 国では石灰岩、日本では木や草を燃やした灰からアルカ リを採っていました。現在の化学パルプのパルピングで も、アルカリ蒸解というものがありますので、昔と今も 使っている薬品は違うのですが、基本的には同じような 方法、原理的にはあまり変わっていないということで す。ただし、決定的な違いとして、天然のものは弱いア ルカリであるのに対して、今使っている工業的なアルカ リは、非常に強いアルカリを使っているところが大きな 違いです。先ほど、中国では竹を使うという話をしまし たが、竹は非常にパルピングがしにくい材料です。その ため、石灰と一緒に埋めるのですが、化学的な力と同時 に発酵させたり腐らせたりという生物の力も借りてい ます。

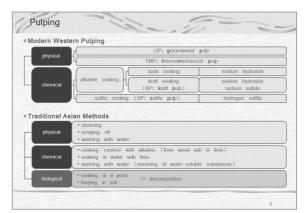


Fig. 5 Methods of pulping パルピングの方法

今度は繊維に対する処理の話をしていきます。基本的に、繊維を取り出した時点で紙はできるわけですが、もう少し紙を白くしたいという要望が出たときに行うのが、漂白です。紙の茶色というか、クリーム色の根源のほとんどはリグニン由来です。そのリグニンの処理には、リグニンを残したまま、リグニン自体をちょっと変えて白くする方法と、根源であるリグニン自体を除いてしまう方法と、2通りの方法があります(Fig. 6)。今の製紙では、基本的に薬品を使って漂白することが多いわけですが、昔の日本あるいは中国では、薬品ではない方法で漂白をしていました。伝統的な方法としては、太陽光を利用する方法です。漂白は酸化還元反応を利用する

paper turns darker. In my office, the paper materials that I put on the shelves have turned really brownish. However, in the case of washi, the papers turn whiter. One example is *minogami*, or Mino paper, which is often used for sliding doors. It starts with this yellowish color, but as you continue to use this paper, it turns whiter. The reason why the yellowing mechanism is different for washi and for modern paper is that in modern wood pulp paper, the fibers are taken from the parts of the tree that contain much lignin, whereas the fibers used for washi are taken from parts of the plants that do not have as much lignin. Therefore, structurally, the fibers used for washi contain less lignin.

Let me recap what I have discussed thus far. I first talked about the raw materials of paper, and where the fibers come from, then second, about how the fibers are obtained, and third, about bleaching. These three aspects affect the durability or longevity of paper, and it is important to know these aspects. For example, regarding the paper that I just introduced, which is minogami, the raw material is kozo. For cooking, I have said that, traditionally, wood ash was used, but because that material is difficult to procure today, paper makers nowadays use soda ash. For bleaching, the fibers are placed in a pool of water and bleach. No other chemicals are used. These three aspects are very important to clarify the quality of paper. When you purchase paper, you probably look at the name or the brand of the paper, but the name does not tell us any necessary information regarding the paper. To use paper in conservation or restoration, you need to identify these three aspects. If these three aspects are not made clear, you should always ask the shop with regard to the raw material, pulping methods, and bleaching of the paper. If the shop or dealer cannot answer these questions, it means that they do not have knowledge regarding the items they are dealing with, which can put their credibility into question.

ので、それをいかに起こすか、いかに促進するかというわけですが、日光の場合は紫外線を使って漂白を促進します。また、地域によっては漂白効果を高めるために、採った繊維を雪の上に並べて、白くするなんてことをする地域もあります。雪の上は非常に紫外線の反射が多いので、効果的に漂白ができるわけです。美濃では、雪の上ではなく、川の浅瀬に繊維を並べて、何日間もずっと水の中で日にさらします。水で不純物を流し続けると同時に、太陽の日に当てるという工程です。

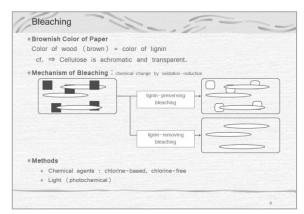


Fig. 6 Bleaching 漂白

漂白とも関わるのですが、紙がエイジングすると暗くなるっていうイメージが強いと思います。私のオフィスにずっと置いてある紙の資料はどんどん茶色くなっていきます。一方、和紙の場合は、だんだん白くなっていきます。美濃紙は、障子などによく使われますが、貼った当初はどちらかというとクリーム色っぽい色をしています。使っているうちに、どんどん白くなっていきます。これは、茶色になるメカニズムが、和紙といわゆるモダンペーパーで違うからです。もともと、木材パルプには木材のリグニンが多く、リグニンが茶色の原因になりますが、和紙の原料の楮は、もともとリグニンがあまりないところを使っているため、リグニンがクリーム色の原因ではありません。

ここまで、三つの要素を話してきました。一つは原料となるもの、つまりどんな植物の、どんな場所から採ったかということ。次に、どういうふうに繊維を取り出したかということ。そして漂白についてです。この三つは、その後の紙の寿命や性質に非常に大きな影響を与えるので、とても重要な情報です。例えば、美濃紙の場合は、まず原料は楮です。煮熟は、もともと日本では草木の灰

As I have said before, I had an opportunity to examine online stores dealing with washi, and I was perusing this particular European conservation material shop, which is quite well known. That particular shop had over 30 items listed as washi, but when I went through the entire list, there was only one item I thought was appropriate for conservation. The rest of the list included items that were not appropriate for conservation, or lacking enough information. Somebody at a museum in Europe told me about takogami-and I came across takogami in this survey. The word "tako" means kite. However, this takogami was listed as a purchasable item for conservation, and I find this to be very questionable. This takogami should be really sturdy if it is used for kites, but it was obviously not produced by paper makers to be used for conservation. The name of a paper and the fact that some famous conservation material stores sell it does not mean that the paper is appropriate for conservation. I hope that in these three weeks, you will understand what kind of paper is appropriate for conservation.

- Q: With regard to bleaching, I did not understand the concept properly. Does whitening occur when the paper ages because of the lack of resins of lignin, or because of the bleaching methods, or a combination of both?
- A: All plant fibers contain both lignin and hemicellulose, and color change in paper is a matter of the proportion of lignin and hemicellulose. In the case of paper that has rich lignin, the color will become brownish as color returns. In the case of paper that is brownish due to something other than lignin, sometimes the paper becomes whitish from being decomposed by UV. In the case of washi, the fibers contain more hemicellulose, and this is the source of the color of washi. When the hemicellulose is eventually decomposed by UV

を使っていたのですが、灰がなかなか手に入らなくなってきて、今では工業的なソーダ灰を使っています。漂白は、薬剤は使わずに、プールのような所で水に漬けて漂白しています。このように、三つの要素を明らかにするというふうにしています。紙を買うときに、銘柄などを見て買うと思いますが、銘柄だけではこういった情報が明らかになりません。コンサベーション、レストレーションに使う場合には、これらの情報を明らかにするようにしてください。もし明らかになってないのであれば、お店の人に必ず聞いてください。こういう情報が来ないということは、そこのディーラーさん自身が、紙の知識がないということなので、どんな紙を扱っているか分からないということになります。

さきほど話したインターネットショッピングサイト の調査の際に、とあるヨーロッパのコンサベーションマ テリアルを売っているインターネットショップでコン サベーション用の和紙として売っている紙を調査しま した。そこでは、項目の名前だけで30数種類ほどの和 紙が出てきたのですが、その中で使っても大丈夫じゃな いかなというのは、1種類しかありませんでした。残り のものは、明らかに使わないほうがいいか、情報不足で 判断できないという紙でした。その中で、少し驚いたも のがありました。ある博物館の修復工房を訪問した際に も言われたのですが、タコガミというものがあり、それ をそのとあるサイトでも扱っていました。タコとは、カ イトの凧で、これを修復用として売っていることに驚き ました。とっても丈夫でいい紙だと思いますが、明らか にもともとコンサベーションとかレストレーションを 意識して作られた紙ではありません。つまり、名前ある いはコンサベーションのお店で売っているというだけ では、いいコンサベーション用の紙が手に入らないの で、ぜひ今回、どんな紙を選ぶべきかという知識を付け ていっていただければと思っています。

- Q: 漂白について、時間がたつと白くなるというのは、リグニンがないからなのか、それとも漂白方法によるものなのか、あるいはこれらの複合的な要因によるものですか?
- A: リグニンが豊富なものは色が戻って茶色になります。リグニン以外で茶色になっているものは、

light, the color of the paper becomes whiter. On the other hand, if western paper, which contains more lignin, is bleached, the color of lignin eventually returns with exposure to UV light. It is a matter of proportion of hemicellulose and lignin, and you see these differences in terms of color change in the paper.

Now, let me talk about sheet forming. Is everyone clear about the fact that we do not need any adhesive to make paper? The fibers in paper bond with each other via hydrogen bonds (Fig. 7). First, the fibers float in water, and as the water is removed from between the fibers, the fibers directly bond via hydrogen bonding. As you know, hydrogen bonds are reversible. When the fibers are rehydrated, and water is added, the fibers will be separated.

Paper conservators are, of course, specialists with regard to paper, but I also believe that paper conservators are good handlers of water. In the practical part of this program, you will see and learn how conservators in Japan use water and how they control the amount of water, and hopefully that will be helpful for your future conservation projects.

The fibers have water, and when water is removed, the fibers bond via hydrogen bonding, which then forms paper (Fig. 7). This is the basis of papermaking, but as you know, in the long history of papermaking, people started to modify certain methods or include additional processes. Let me discuss the preparation of materials.

First, the plant fibers are put in water and dispersed to loosen them. Afterward, other ingredients can be added there. Here is a list of possible additional materials—for example, sizing agents or fillers, which you may well know, given that you have also been dealing with western papers. Additional treatments are then used after the sheets of papers are formed.

Let me explain the modification of washi (Fig. 8).

それが紫外線で分解されて白くなることがあります。ただ、これはどちらか片方しかないわけではないので、どちらがより優勢かという数の問題です。リグニンしかない紙というのはありません。和紙の場合は、リグニンがほとんどなくへミセルロースが多いので、ヘミセルロースの変化のほうが、大きく色に影響してくる。そうすると、ヘミセルロースは分解して色がなくなるので、白くなります。一方で、木材パルプの場合は、リグニンが一度漂白されており、それが紫外線の影響で茶色く戻ってしまうということがあります。そういったメカニズムの違いじゃないかと言われています。

繊維をシートにしていく話をします。紙を作るときには接着剤は必要ありません。水素結合というもので繊維と繊維がくっついています(Fig. 7)。水素結合というのは可逆性があります。もともと繊維が水に浮いている状態から水が抜けていくと、最終的には繊維と繊維が水素結合するのですが、水がくるとまた離れるということはご存じだと思います。可逆性があるというのが水素結合の特徴です。

紙の文化財の保存修復技術者をペーパーコンサバター、ペーパーレストアラーと言いますが、彼らは当然紙のスペシャリストではあるべきですが、水を操るスペシャリストだと私は思っています。本研修でも、日本のコンサバターたちが、どのように水を与えるのか、どのように水をコントロールしているかということを覚えていただくと、皆さんの仕事のヒントになると思います。

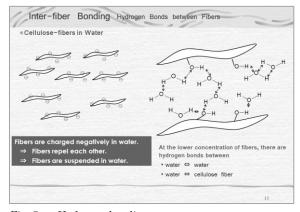


Fig. 7 Hydrogen bonding 水素結合

There are cases wherein sizing is done in Japan. In Japan, sizing is done after the sheet of paper is formed. The process is probably the same in China; however, here, we use alum and animal glue, called dosa. Sometimes, we add fillers. Something that seems quite Japanese is rice powder being used as a filler. The material gofun, which is calcium carbonate, can also be used, with some high-quality gofun being derived from seashells. Hakudo, on the other hand, is often translated as white clay, but you need to be careful with this term. Normally, hakudo refers to clay that contains aluminum silicate or silicone oxide, but in Japan, sometimes hakudo is derived from limestones. In that case, the limestone-derived hakudo has the same constituents as gofun and calcium carbonate.

One of the things that is very essential in washi making is called "neri." Neri is a dispersant, and in some regions in Japan, it is called or pronounced nori. It is easy to get confused about neri, because the sound is similar to the word refers to paste "nori," but neri has no adhesiveness. It may be a really gluey substance, but it has no adhesiveness. The reason for using dispersant is that washi uses longer fibers, which easily entangle each other. Long fibers often entangle each other and make lumps or chunks, which is prevented through the use of dispersants. When the fibers are evenly distributed or dispersed, the draining of water slows down. The slow drainage of water also lowers the productivity of papermaking, but it also has a good effect. The papermaking process involves the action of shaking the screen. This procedure disperses fibers evenly on the screen. However, if the water is drained too fast, then as you move the screen, the water disappears or gets drained very quickly. In this regard, neri has two positive effects. First, it prevents the fibers from tangling with each other. Secondly, neri slows down the drainage of water, which allows the paper maker to move the screen and disperse the fiber more evenly.

水が抜けて、繊維同士が結合すれば紙になります。長い紙の歴史の中で、人間はいろいろな用途に応じて改良していこうと、いろんな加工をしたり、材料を加えたりしてきました。加工したり、材料を加える段階には幾つかあり、その段階に応じて説明していきます。

最初は、植物繊維を水に入れて分散させるときに、何かを加えるという方法です。近現代の紙を扱っている人は既にご存じだと思いますが、サイジング剤を入れたりとか、填料を入れたりとか、いろんなものを入れています。ほかには、紙がシートになった後に加工する方法もあります。

和紙の場合はどうかというところをお示しします (Fig. 8)。サイジングは日本でもすることがあります。日本の場合は、紙がシートになってから塗る方法で行います。日本あるいは中国も同じだと思いますが、ミョウバンと膠を混ぜた礬水(ドーサ)というものを塗ります。 塡料を入れることもあります。日本らしいものとしては、米粉を入れるものがあります。ほかには、胡粉という貝殻を原料としているもの、つまり炭酸カルシウムを使うこともあります。白土というものを使うことがあります。白土というと、直訳するとホワイトクレイなのですが、ちょっとご注意ください。普通に白土というと、粘土質のものでアルミニウムケイ酸塩やシリコンをたくさん含むものを指すのですが、日本の場合は石灰岩から作ったものも、白土と呼ばれることがあります。つまり成分的には、胡粉と同じです。

それから、和紙には絶対必要なネリというものがあります。これが地方によってはノリとも呼ばれます。糊と音が似ているので混乱しがちですが、ネリには接着力はありません。糸を引く感じではありますがくっつくものではありません。ネリは分散剤として使用されています。分散剤が必要な理由として、和紙の繊維は長いため、絡んでしまいやすいということがあります。絡んでだまになると、いい紙ができないので、そうならないように繊維と繊維を分散させるというのが、まず一つの目的です。それからもう一つは、繊維が均一に分散すると、水の抜け方が遅くなります。スピードが遅くなるというのは、生産する量という点では悪くなるかもしれませんが、和紙にとっては時間をとることができるということが重要です。和紙を漉く際には、途中で揺するアクショ

The last aspect to be discussed here does not concern additional materials; rather, it concerns physical treatment. Here are two examples: uchigami, which is the beating paper, and kenshi, which is the grossing paper. These two types of treatment are intended to tighten the fibers and flatten or smoothen the surface of paper without using dosa, which is a mixture of alum and animal glue, but with the physical treatment, you can also produce paper that does not bleed ink or paint. However, compared with applying dosa, beating, polishing, or grossing is more strenuous and requires more physical work. In the olden times, the technique of uchigami was more common, but in more contemporary periods, specifically in more recent decades or years, there has been less uchigami, and the practice has almost disappeared. Until quite recently, many scholars of humanities mistook paper that was actually uchigami for something else because they did not know the history of uchigami. Conventionally, kozo paper was used for uchigami, but because when it is beaten, kozo paper obtains a glossier texture, and therefore, it does not look like typical kozo paper. Previous scholars have concluded that this paper is a mixture of gampi and kozo because it has the characteristics of gampi, which has a glossier surface, and also the characteristics of kozo paper. However, the paper was later determined to actually be kozo beating paper.

Let me then discuss more complete details about washi. "Kami" is translated as "paper" in English. There is some confusion regarding the Japanese language because part of the Japanese language consists of idiographic characters and phonetic characters. The idiographic part comes from the Chinese language. In addition, Japanese had its own indigenous language, which can create some confusion when you are learning Japanese. For example, the indigenous word that corresponds to the Chinese character refers to paper as "kami," but we also have

ンが入ります。これは、繊維を均一にならしていく工程で、水が抜けるのが早いと、揺すって均一にする前に水が抜けてしまうので、均一にできません。水の抜けが遅くなることも、均一性を保つのに必要な時間ということです。だまにならないということと、ゆっくり揺する時間ができるので均一にできるということで、この二つの効果があるからこそ、日本の薄くて均一な紙ができるということです。

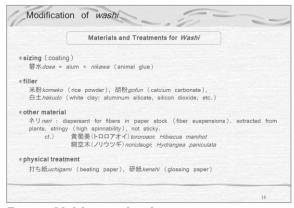


Fig. 8 Modification of washi 和紙の加工

それからもう一つ、これは材料を加えるわけではな く、単純に物理的な加工です。打紙という行為、磨紙と いう紙を磨くという行為があります。どちらも紙の繊維 と繊維をぎゅっと詰めて、表面を平らにするための工程 です。これをすることで、礬水というサイジングをする と言いましたが、サイジングをせずににじみを止めるこ とができます。この手法は礬水を作って塗るよりも、随 分時間も手間もかかります。古い時代にはお経などの紙 に結構されていたようですが、時代が新しくなってくる と、あまりされなくなり、しばらく忘れられた技術でし た。文系の学者が古い文書を見て、この紙の原料は何か ということを記録として残していました。ところが、こ の打紙という方法を知らないので、判断を誤りました。 楮の紙に打紙をすると、表面がつるつるできめが細か く、ぴかぴかとするので、楮の紙ではないと思ってしま ったわけです。そこで彼らは雁皮のように表面が平滑 で、でも楮紙の特徴も見えるということで、この二つの 繊維を混ぜて作った紙だろうと彼らは書いていました。 ところが、実際にはただの楮の紙を叩いただけだったと いうことが、後から分かりました。

another pronunciation for this Chinese character, which is "shi," which should be closer to the Chinese pronunciation. We also have "kami," which, when the consonant is voiced in a different way, can be pronounced as "gami." As mentioned earlier, we can also pronounce it as shi. For example, Mino paper can be referred to as either minogami or minoshi.

Here is a list of some commonly used washi (Fig. 9). There are three main methods of naming washi. The first method is related to the material, whereas the second method refers to where the paper is made, the place where it originated, and, in some names, the purpose or feature of the paper. There are also cases wherein the name is invented as a brand name.

Easier names include *kozogami* or *gampishi*. Even for *kozo* paper, there are different names—for example, *kozogami* or *choshi*. Another way to refer to *kozo* paper is *kokushi*. We also have the word *danshi*. Originally, this name of paper was based on spindle tree fibers, from which the paper was made. Eventually, the fibers used for this paper were replaced by *kozo* fibers. Today, *danshi* refers to a special type of *kozo* paper. There are also cases wherein the name of the paper does not really reflect what it contains or what it was intended for in this long history of papermaking in Japan.

This naming method also applies to papers with the names of places. *Minogami*, which you are probably familiar with and which you are also going to be using frequently in this workshop or in practical work, is paper produced in the Mino region. However, *minogami* became very popular and well known that paper produced outside of Mino, for example, began to be referred to as *minogami*. Therefore, *minogami* became a generic term for some kinds of paper. Originally, *minogami* is produced in the region called Mino in the Gifu prefecture. Its key materials are *kozo* fibers and no fillers. It is known for its strength and good formation and is considered to be very beautiful. The key characteristics of *minogami* became so

では具体的な、和紙ついての話に移ります。紙という日本語は英語に訳すとペーパーになります。日本語の文字は中国から取り入れたものですが、もともと日本にも言葉はあり、それが混在しているところが、混乱を招く原因になっていると思います。日本は「カミ(=paper)」に「紙」という漢字を当てました。元の中国に近いものとして、「シ」という発音があります。日本では紙を表す言葉に「カミ」、そして音が少し変化した「ガミ」というときもあれば、「シ」というときもあります。美濃の紙を、ミノシと言ってもいいですし、ミノガミと言っても通じます。どちらでも同じです。

実際に出てくる紙の名前を幾つか挙げました(Fig. 9)。和紙の名前の付け方は、幾つかのパターンがあって、原材料名で付いている場合と、土地や地域など場所に由来する名前が付いている場合、それから特色や目的から名前が付いている、おおよそこの三つのパターンがあると思います。もちろん完全にブランドネームという場合もあります。



Fig. 9 Name of washi 和紙の名前

順番に見ていきますと、原材料の場合は、楮で作った紙は楮紙、雁皮で作った紙は雁皮紙なんていうのは、非常に分かりやすいと思います。これも読み方がいろいろあり、楮紙を「チョシ」ということもありますし、楮を別の漢字で表して、「穀紙」ということもあるのですが、いずれにしろどちらも楮紙を表しています。その他に、檀紙というものがあります。もともとはマユミ(檀)の木から作った紙を表していたと思われていますが、いつの時代からか、楮で作った紙に変わっていきました。今、檀紙というと、楮で作った、ちょっと特色のある紙のことを指すようになっています。このように、長い歴史の

popular that paper produced in other parts of Japan, but also characterized with the same features, such as strength, good formation, and beauty, and also made from *kozo* but no fillers, started to be referred to also as *minogami*. Machine-made *minogami* have also been developed.

In my first lecture, I talked about the different designations for cultural properties by the government—for example, designations for craft technique and intangible cultural properties. Minogami is also designated as an Important Intangible Cultural Property. However, when minogami was designated as an Important Intangible Cultural Property, the term minogami was used as a generic term for a specific kind of washi. Thus, when the technique of minogami papermaking was designated, other makers could not be restricted from using the term *minogami*, and thus the designators had to assign another name, which is Hon-Minoshi (Fig. 10).

In the case of *minogami*, the name refers to the place of production. By contrast, for example, in *udagami*, Uda is the place where dealers of this particular paper were located. Although this *udagami* is produced in the Yoshino region of Nara prefecture, this paper was sold throughout Japan during the Edo period by dealers living in the area called Uda in the same prefecture. Therefore, this paper is known by the name of the place where the dealers were located.

With regard to the key characteristics of different kinds of paper, we have here some samples of paper. This paper was produced in the papermaking studio that you will visit in the study tour in Mino. Some descriptions have been included. One description indicates the kind of *kozo* that was used—in this case, Nasu *kozo*. Nasu is a region north of Tokyo, in the Ibaragi and Tochigi prefectures. Another description indicates how the paper was dried—in this case, it was placed on a wooden board and dried. There are some

過程の中で、もともとの意味から少しずつ離れていって、違うものになってしまっている場合もあります。

土地の名前が付いている紙もあります。例えば美濃紙という紙は、これはもともと、美濃地方の紙というものです。美濃紙は、あまりにも有名になり過ぎたが故に、美濃で作ってない紙も、美濃紙と呼ぶようになり、一般名称化していきました。美濃紙は、もともとは美濃、岐阜県のある地方で作っていて、楮で塡料が入ってなく、強く、地合いが非常によく、美しい、というイメージの紙です。このイメージが強く出てしまったので、他の地方で作った紙でも、楮で塡料がなく、丈夫でいい地合いできれいな紙が、美濃紙と呼ばれていくようになってしまいました。また、機械すきの美濃紙というものもあります。

最初の講義で日本には国の指定という制度があり、無 形文化財、工芸技術なども指定されていると話をしまし たが、美濃紙を作る技術も国は指定しています。指定を するときに、美濃紙という名前が一般名称化しているの で、いまさらこの名前はこれです、他の人は使ってはい けませんというわけにはいかず、「本」つまりジェニュイ ンという意味の漢字を付けて、本美濃紙という名前で指 定をしました(Fig. 10)。



Fig. 10 Characteristics of *minogami* 美濃紙の特徴

他にも、様々な地方の名前が付いているものがあるのですが、あるものは作っている地方の名称ですが、あるものは作っている所ではなく、それを売り出した問屋があった場所の名前が付いていることもあります。宇陀紙の場合は、江戸時代に奈良県の宇陀という町にあった問屋が、日本全国に売り出したので、この名前が有名になりました。実際に紙を作っているのは奈良の吉野です。

cases that the description says iron board drying was applied; however, an iron board was not actually used. Rather, normal steel or metal dryers were used. However, it is preferable to use wooded board-dried papers, as opposed to metal dryers, for conservation. The first reason is that the metal ions would have had some effects on the paper. Another difference in a comparison between metal dry or wooden board dry papers is in terms of paper absorption. Many Japanese conservators also say that it is difficult to use metal dry papers. Another description indicates the thickness of the paper. Here, it says that this paper is of middle thickness. There are some signatures or stamps, which state that the papers are designated as Important Intangible Cultural Property, which is the authentication for Hon-Minoshi.

When you purchase paper, especially in the West, normally you purchase on the basis of weight. On the package, we describe the thickness of the paper, but when we purchase, we use the weight per sheet. However, the sizes of paper are not unified. Most of the time, *minogami* comes in 90 cm by 60 cm, but different studios produce slightly different sizes. Even if you thought you ordered the same weight per sheet, the thickness may differ depending on the studio.

This is a *misugami*, or a *misu* paper, that you will be using. *Misugami* is made in the size about 64 cm by 25 cm. It is smaller than you may have expected. The size 90 cm by 60 cm for paper, like for *minogami*, became more standard after the 19th century. Prior to the early modern period, *minogami* paper makers probably used smaller sizes, such as that used for *misugami*. In Japan toward the end of the 19th century, a man who was a big inventor introduced the production of larger paper throughout the country. You will actually see how papermaking works in the studio that you will be visiting. To hold the screen, a bamboo suspension is used. That inventor invented that mechanism. His invention helped increase the size of paper. It also allowed older people to continue to work

あとは特徴の話がありますが、これは実際に幾つか紙 を持ってきているので、それを見ながら皆さんと一緒に お話をしていきたいと思います。これは、皆さんが今度 見学に行く美濃の工房で作っている紙です。例えば、ど んな楮を使ったかということは、那須楮と書いてあるの で、茨城、栃木あたりの楮を使っているというのが分か ります。干し方も板干しと書いてあるので、木の板に張 り付けて干す方法です。たまに鉄板干しと書いてある場 合がありますが、実際には鉄ではなく、スチールなどの 金属のドライヤーに張り付けて、乾かす方法になりま す。修復に使うものとしては、金属に張り付けたものよ りは、木に張り付けたもののほうがいいと思います。そ れは、金属成分の影響があるためです。もう一つは、金 属に張り付けると、水の吸収の仕方が木板のものとは全 然違うようで、日本の修復技術者で、使いづらいと言う 方もいます。中肉と書いてありますが、これは厚さを表 しています。はんこは、格付け的なものが幾つか押して あります。例えば、重要無形文化財に指定されている、 本美濃紙であるということが書いてあります。

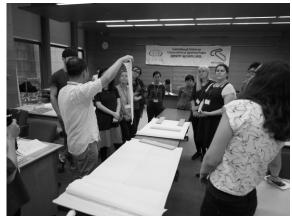


Fig. 11 Lecture 講義

欧米で紙を購入する際は、平米当たり何グラムという 坪量で表すと思いますが。日本の場合は、言葉でいうと きは厚みと称しますが、数字で表すときは、紙1枚当たりの重さで表すことが多いです。ただし紙の大きさが統一されていません。美濃紙の中ですら、その大きさは大体 90 cm 掛ける 60 cm ですが、工房によって若干サイズが違います。そのため、同じグラム数で頼んだつもりが、工房が変わると厚さが違うこともあるので気を付けてください。

in papermaking.

You can touch *misugami*. How does it feel? (Participant says, "It's soft.") *Misugami* contains filler. The softness arises from the fillers preventing hydrogen bonds from occurring. There are differences in terms of drying. Normally, when *minogami* is made, the papers are piled on each other and pressed, whereas when *misugami* is made, each sheet of paper is dried without being pressed, and therefore, it retains some softness.

Please notice the gloss on the surface of gampi paper. I have told you about the episode where some scholars were confused and mistook beating kozo paper as gampi paper. In other words, if you beat kozo paper, you would probably produce something with a texture or gloss similar to that of gampi. Gampi paper is expensive. By comparison, kozo trees can be cultivated, and you can plant them and let them grow, whereas to produce gampi, you have to find naturally grown gampi trees.

When inspecting paper, specialists of paper in Japan hear for the sound and noise of density. The tighter the bond of the fibers, the sharper the cracking sound.

Here, we have *mitsumata* paper. *Mitsumata* paper is more orangish or reddish. By contrast, *kozo* paper is more yellowish. This is called *torinokogami*. It should be made of *gampi*. "*Torinoko*" refers to bird eggs. The name comes from eggshells. It does not contain any fillers and is entirely made of *gampi*. Meanwhile, these are called *maniaigami*, and they all have fillers. The color difference arises from the difference in the fillers. The word "*maniau*" means appropriate for just the right size, or just the right use for something. These papers are used for the underlayer of folding screens or sliding doors. The width of Japanese sliding doors or panels is about 90 cm, and thus this paper was called *maniaigami* because it is just the right size for sliding doors.

これは実習でも使用する美栖紙です。この約 64 cm 掛ける 25 cm が漉いたままの寸法です。皆さんのイメージよりだいぶ小さいと思います。90 cm 掛ける 60 cm の大きさは、実は 19 世紀以降に漉かれるようになった大きさですね。それまでは、美濃でもおそらく美栖紙と似通った大きさだったと思います。19 世紀の末に、和紙漉きにおいて大きな発明をした人がおり、その人が様々な技術を開発して広めたことで、和紙のサイズは大きくなりました。工房見学時に見られますが、紙を漉く簀桁を糸で吊って竹のバネに掛けています。そのシステムが 19 世紀末に発明されたものです。それのおかげで和紙が大きくなり老人でも漉けるようになりました。

美栖紙を触ってみてください。どうですか? (研修生「柔らかい」) 美栖紙には塡料が入っています。塡料は水素結合を阻害するため、繊維結合が緩くなって紙は柔らかくなります。干し方も異なります。美濃紙などは紙を漉いた後に圧力をかけて水を絞りますが、美栖紙はそのまま板の上に載せていく方法を取っているので柔らかくなります。

これが雁皮紙です。さきほど打紙した楮紙を、雁皮が 入っていると間違えたという話をしましたが、この雁皮 紙の光沢を見てください。逆に言うと楮紙も、打てば同 じくらいの光沢が出るはずです。雁皮紙は高価です。楮 は栽培できますが、雁皮は栽培できません。そのため、 自生しているものを探す必要があります。

紙を見るときに、反射したり透かして見たりする方法 もありますが、日本の紙の専門家はナリといって、必ず 音を聞きます。これで、紙の締まり具合を聞きます。繊 維がちゃんとくっついているほど高い音がします。

これは三椏紙です。楮と比べると、三椏のほうが赤っぽい、オレンジっぽい色をしています。楮紙のほうは黄色っぽいです。こちらは鳥の子紙という、雁皮紙です。鳥の子という名前は卵を意味しており、卵の殻の色に由来しています。填料は入っていません。填料が入っている紙で有名なのが、間合紙という紙です。入っている土の種類によって色も違います。間に合うというのはちょうど良いという意味です。何からきたかというと、この紙は襖や屏風の下張りに使います。日本のドアの幅は大体90cmなので、90cmの幅に張って十分に間に合うぐらいの幅の紙という意味です。

- Q: You said that fillers prevent hydrogen bonding. However, I found this one: when it is wet, it is really weak, and you can tear it easily. Are the fillers the reason for this, or is it also because of the fibers?
- A: One reason is the presence of fillers preventing the bonding. In addition, the fibers of the *gampi* themselves are shorter.

This is a characteristic of paper with fillers. Because hydrogen bonding becomes weaker when water drops, the fibers in the area that is affected are easily loosened. You see the screen itself is placed in this wood frame, and you see the chain lines and laid lines of the screen. In addition, the screen is placed within the wooden frame, and the wooden frame has this beam-like structure, and thus further than that, the drainage of water slows down because of the presence of the beams.

- Q: In western paper, we have watermarks. Is there something like that for Japanese paper?
- A: There are no intentional watermarks in paper produced in Japan.
- Q: There is a small patch in there. Is that again just from the screen?
- A: This is a grain of wood board on which the paper was dried. You can also see traces of bristles of a brush. When you put the paper on a wooden board for drying, the paper maker would then use a brush to attach the paper onto the wooden board. Here, you will also see the brush strokes.
- Q: Are Japanese papers ever made with similar grain directions?
- A: When the paper is drying? It does not really matter. In some cases, the node of the wood appears on some papers, and thus the grain direction does not really matter. However, for *minogami*, very fine, thin paper is what should

- Q: 填料が水素結合を阻害すると仰っていましたが、 たとえばこの紙は濡れた状態ではとても弱く、簡 単に裂くことができます。これは、填料によるも のですか?それとも繊維自体によるものです か?
- A: 雁皮紙は、繊維自体が短いのもありますけど、塡 料によって弱いということもあると思います。

填料が入っている紙に水の跡がよく見られるのですが、非常に繊維結合が緩いので、水が落ちたときに跡が付きやすいのだと思います。薄くなっている線が、簀の目と糸目です。桁には簀を支えるための桟があり、そこだけ水が抜けるスピードが遅くなるため、繊維がたまって濃くなります。

- Q: 西洋の紙にはウォーターマークを入れることが ありますが、そのようなものは日本でもあります か?
- A: 基本的には、日本では意図的にウォーターマーク は入れません。
- **Q**: 小さなまだらのようなものがありますが、これも **管**によるものですか?
- A: これは張った板の木目です。よく見ると、板に張るときにブラシで表面をこすった跡も見えます。
- Q: 和紙は木目に沿って作りますか?
- A: 乾かすときに?それはありません。ものによっては節のところが見えるものもあります。美濃なんかは、薄くてきれいな紙を漉きたいので、こういうマークも嫌い、あまり木目が出ないような板を使っています。美栖紙は、江戸時代は鼻かみ紙として使われていて、あまり見た目は気にしない紙だったと思います。

be produced, and thus boards that do not have these grains are used instead. On the other hand, *misugami* was used as a tissue paper during the Edo period for consumption, and thus the producers of this paper did not care very much about the aesthetics of the paper.

4 Protection of Craft Techniques in Japan: Present Condition and Transitions 日本における工芸技術保護の現状と変遷

Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties ${\bf KIKUCHI\ Riyo}$

My name is Riyo Kikuchi, and I am from the institute. I am going to talk about the present condition and the history of the protection of craft techniques in Japan. I belong to the Department of Intangible Cultural Heritage. We do fundamental research on the protection of intangible cultural heritage in Japan. For example, we study the performing arts, craft techniques, festivals, customs, and folk techniques. My special field is craft techniques and particularly specialize in textiles.

The core of what we do is document the information. We use films in order to transmit to the next generation the techniques that are employed in craftwork. For example, in 2014 and 2015, I was involved in a joint research project on textiles of the Saitama, which is near Tokyo. We made a record and a report with DVDs the different ways that the tools are acquired, utilized and maintained in order to make the textiles.

Another project that I had been involved since 2016 was a joint study with Kusatsu City in Shiga Prefecture about the spiderwort-dyed paper. The paper is used as an under-drawing for *Yuzen* dyeing and *Ukiyoe* under-drawing. It had been used since a long time in the past. When we were filming this in 2016, there were three families that cultivate the spiderwort plant for dyeing. In 2019, it decreased to one family only. Transmitting the technique is closely related with various circumstance. In order to make the spiderwort-dyed paper, they pick the flower of spiderwort and wring them out. It is a repetition of picking the flowers and wringing out the color from the flowers that are involved. This is the report of the spiderwort-dyed paper production technique (Fig. 1).

東京文化財研究所

菊池 理予

おはようございます。東京文化財研究所の菊池です。 私からは、日本における工芸技術保護の現状と変遷についてお話したいと思います。私は無形文化遺産部に所属しており、日本の無形文化遺産の保護に関わる基礎的な研究を実施しています。無形文化遺産というと、芸能や工芸技術、そしてお祭りや風土と慣習、民俗技術などが含まれます。この中の「工芸技術」が私の分野となります。特に、その中でも染織技術を中心に研究を行っています。

実際に行っている事業の中で核となるものに「記録」があります。無形のわざを次の世代に引き継ぐために、映像などを使って記録をしています。例えば、私が担当したものには、平成26~27 (2014~15) 年の2年間にわたって行った、埼玉県の熊谷市との共同事業の熊谷染という染め物に関する共同調査があります。ここではそれぞれの工房の道具の使い方、入手、メンテナンスなどの情報を記録し、映像(DVD)付きの報告書としてまとめました。

もう一つ、平成 28 (2016) 年からは滋賀県の草津市 との共同事業で、青花紙の製作技術についての記録作成 事業を行いました。青花紙は友禅染の下絵や浮世絵の絵 具として用いられてきた材料です。古くから染料として 使われてきましたが、私たちが調査に入った時はわずか 3 軒の農家で製作されており、平成 31/令和元 (2019) 年には1軒のみなってしまいました。技術の継承は様々 な事情と密接に関わります。青花紙の作り方は、青い花 を摘んで、花弁を搾り和紙に塗り付けていきます。花を 摘んで、搾り塗るということを繰り返して作っていま す。これが青花紙製作技術の報告書で、作り方の映像も 付属しています(Fig. 1)。青花紙を実際に使うときには、 水に浸して出てくる青い染料を使用します。このよう に、近年では、いわゆる文化財の保存技術である染織品 を作るために欠かせない材料や道具の製作技術調査が、 私の仕事の中心となっています。

It comes with the film to show you how it is made. When we use it, the paper is placed in water and used the blue dye which is exuded from the paper. Recently, my work centers around doing such research on production techniques that are indispensable for making craftwork.

I have introduced to you some of my work, but let's go to the fundamentals and think about what we mean by intangible cultural heritage or intangible cultural properties. Normally, when we talk about a cultural property, we think about things that are tangible like paintings, sculptures, crafts, and buildings. Compared with that, an intangible cultural property is a little difficult to understand. For example, the technique of making washi is being protected among the intangible cultural properties. You went to Mino last week and saw how the washi is made. That technique itself is an intangible cultural property. I would like to talk about that point.

It is very difficult to cover everything in this one lecture, but I would like to focus on three points. The first point is how craft techniques are protected within the framework of the law for the protection of cultural properties. The second point is how those frameworks are established. The third point is what we mean by the documentation of craft techniques.

In 1950, the law for the protection of cultural properties was enacted. There were laws even before this one that protected paintings and architectures. But this was the first law that targeted intangible cultural properties as well. This law is the basic principle for the intangible cultural properties of Japan. The measures and projects of the Agency for Cultural Affairs are based on this big law. The local government also follow this law in order to establish their own rules and regulations. We are in the 69th year of the enactment in 2019. The protection of the intangible cultural properties is done by the government, the Agency for Cultural Affairs, the local government, and some private organizations.



Fig. 1 Report of the spiderwort-dyed paper 青花紙製作に関する報告書

さて、少しだけ私の仕事の紹介をしましたが、そもそも無形文化財、無形文化遺産とは何なのでしょうか。一般的に文化財というと絵画、彫刻、工芸品、建造物など、形のあるものが多いと思います。それに比べるとちょっと分かりづらいですよね。実は無形文化財の中で、和紙を作る技術が保護されています。先週皆さんは美濃へ行って、和紙の製作現場をご覧になっていると思います。その「わざ」そのものが文化財です。今回の講義ではその点についてご紹介をできればと思います。

今回の講義で全ての内容をお伝えするのは難しいのですが、三つのテーマに沿って話をしていきたいと思います。1番、工芸技術は文化財保護法の中でどのように守られているのか。2番、そしてそのような枠組みはどのようにつくられていったのか。3番、工芸技術の記録とは何か、についてお話していきます。

日本で無形文化財を文化財の範疇に考えていこうとしたのが、昭和 25 (1950) 年に制定された文化財保護法になります。この法律の前にも日本には絵画や建造物などを守るための法律はありました。しかし、無形も対象としたのはこの文化財保護法となります。無形文化財の我が国のベーシックな基準はこの文化財保護法です。

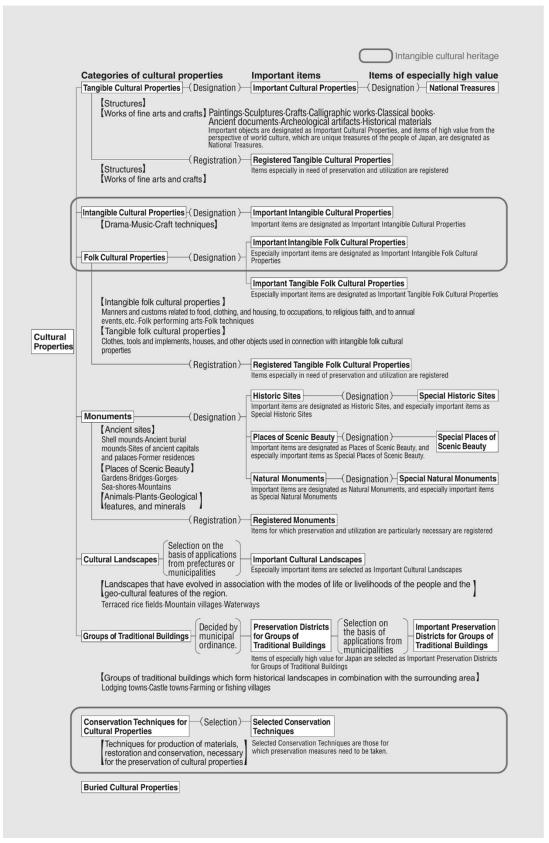


Fig. 2 Schematic Diagram of Cultural Properties

文化財の体系図

Adapted from Intangible Cultural Heritage: Protection System for Intangible Cultural Heritage in Japan (p. 6), by Agency for Cultural Affairs of Japan (ed.), n.d., Asia/ Pacific Cultural Centre for UNESCO (ACCU), Retrieved July 31st, 2017 from https://www.bunka.go.jp/english/report/publication/pdf/pamphlet_en_05.pdf.

Let us talk about the way in which craft techniques are protected. This legal definition tells us about the concept of a cultural property. Many things are considered cultural properties (Fig. 2). The part that is in-framed by the circle tells us about the craft techniques. Within this framework, the handmade washi and handmade washi technique are protected. The top shows the Intangible Cultural Properties. The bottom red frame shows the Selected Conservation Techniques. Dr. Kato talked about that in his lecture. I would like to focus on the Intangible Cultural Properties.

The Intangible Cultural Properties is defined in the law for the protection of cultural properties as "Drama, music, craft techniques and other intangible cultural assets that are of high historic or artistic value for the country." Techniques themselves are intangible cultural properties and what is made does not. We designate a craft technique as an intangible cultural property based on some criteria (Fig. 3), and the people or the groups of people who have these techniques are given recognition. This is the way in which an intangible cultural property is protected.

The same idea is considered by local governments too when they establish intangible cultural properties for protection. For example, the technique of making *Najio Gampi-shi* is designated as an Intangible Cultural Property, and individual recognition is given to the person who makes the *Najio Gampi-shi*, Mr. Tanino Takenobu. A big difference between intangible and tangible cultural properties is that intangible cultural properties may be annulled. For example, if the person who is recognized as having the technique passes away, then that designation is annulled.

There is another way in which a group of holders is recognized. *Hon-minoshi*, which you visited and saw, is designated as an intangible cultural property. The group who are involved in making the *Hon-minoshi* is recognized as the holders of the technique. Because it is a group that is recognized, even if one person passes

文化庁の保護事業等はこの法律に沿ったものですし、地方公共団体でも、文化財保護法に倣って作られたルールで運営されているものが多くあります。文化財保護法が制定されてから今年(2019)で69年がたちました。現在では、無形文化財の保護については文化庁や地方公共団体などの行政機関、そしてポーラ伝統文化振興財団などのその他の団体でも行われるようになりました。

では、まず初めに、工芸技術は文化財保護法の中でどのように守られているのかについてお話したいと思います。我が国の文化財の体系図を見ると、たくさんのものが文化財として考えられています。図の中でラインで囲われている部分が、工芸技術に関わる項目です(Fig. 2)。この中に「手漉和紙」という項目があり、和紙を漉く技術が保護されています。この上の丸が無形文化財、下の丸が選定保存技術です。選定保存技術については、加藤先生のレクチャーの中で説明がされていたと思います。そこで今回は、無形文化財の工芸技術についてお話をしていきたいと思います。

文化財保護法によれば、無形文化財とは「演劇、音楽、 工芸技術その他の無形の文化的所産で、我が国にとって 歴史上または芸術上価値の高いもの」と定義されていま す。この無形文化財は「わざ」そのものです。作られた ものが無形文化財になるわけではありません。無形文化 財の保護は、三つの評価基準 (Fig. 3) を満たす「わざ」 を指定して、技術者個人か団体を認定することで保護措 置を講じていきます。これが重要無形文化財で行われて いる保護の方法です。

Important Intangible Cultural Properties (craft techniques)

- 1. Significantly high artistic value
- 2. Special importance in history of craftwork
- Highly marked local characteristics in addition to having high artistic value or special importance in history of craftwork

Fig. 3 Criterias of Intangible Cultural Properties 重要無形文化財(工芸技術)の評価基準

away, the designation is not canceled. This is a system that was in place not from the very beginning but was introduced a little later on. Craft techniques, as you may be aware, are not very often done by one person only, but in a studio involving very complex systems of division of labor. That is why the people who hold these techniques requested that there be named a recognition of a group of holders.

There is a big difference in individual recognition and group recognition. That is, the requirement for recognition. For example, the materials, the tools, and the designs are all prescribed in the requirement. Now, there is no specific designation requirement for individual recognition, but there is for group recognition. For example, we can think about this from the point of view of papermaking. There is one person each for the recognition of *Echizen Hoshoshi* and *Najio Gampi-shi*. They are individual recognition. There is no specific requirement. But for group recognition, for these four different types of paper, *Hon-minoshi*, *Hosokawa-shi*, *Sekishu-Banshi* and *Echizen Torinokoshi*, there are specific requirements.

In other words, if you are individually recognized, you are given freedom to make whatever paper you wish regardless of the material or the tools. For group recognition, you cannot change the materials or the tools or the way of making. In group recognition, the focus is on preserving the technique whereas, with individual recognition, the focus is placed on the person himself.

Let us look at this in concrete cases. There are the four groups of the holders of different types of paper making. The raw material of the *Echizen Torinokoshi* is *gampi*, whereas everything else is *kozo*. There is practically no difference between the requirements for *Hosokawa-shi* or *Sekishu-Banshi* but there are some differences compared with *Hon-minoshi*.

There is a very specific requirement about, for example, the screen that is used for *Hon-minoshi*. The bamboo that is used in the screen must be joined in

この方法は多くの地方自治体の保護の方法としても 採用されています。例えば、名塩雁皮紙という技術を指 定して、谷野武信(谷野剛惟)という個人を認定すると いうことです。無形文化財が有形文化財と一番違うとこ ろがあります。それは、無形文化財には解除が多くある ということです。つまり、認定者である個人が亡くなっ た場合、そのわざは解除になります。

一方、皆さんが見学された通り、本美濃紙という技術を指定して、本美濃紙保存会という保持団体を認定するという方法があります。これは団体が認定者ですので、グループの1人が亡くなるだけでは解除になりません。この保持団体を認定するというのは途中からできた制度です。皆さんもご存じのとおり、工芸という分野は1人で作業して出来上がるものはとても少なく、工房としての製作や、複雑な分業体制のところもあります。だからこそ保持者の方々から、団体による認定をつくってほしいという声が上がったといいます。

個人を認定する場合と団体を認定する場合には、仕組み上のとても大きな違いがあります。それが指定要件という仕組みです。指定要件では、材料や道具、デザインなどが規定されます。現在の体制では個人の場合には指定要件がなく、団体にはあります。例えば、手漉和紙の分野では、個人の認定では、越前奉書の岩野市兵衛氏(九代 岩野市兵衛)と名塩雁皮紙の谷野武信氏が認定者となっています。こちらは個人の認定になるわけです。そのため、指定要件はありません。しかし、保持団体での認定である、本美濃紙、細川紙、石州半紙、越前鳥の子紙は、それぞれ指定要件が定められています。

つまり、個人で認定されている人は原材料や道具、製法は定められていないため、自由な創作ができます。しかし保持団体の場合には、原材料や道具、製法に要件が設けられます。これは、個人で認定されている場合には作家支援というような側面が見いだされ、保持団体認定の場合には技術保存の側面があると言えるわけです。

具体的にみてみたいと思います。現在、保持団体として4件の手漉和紙が指定されています。そのうち、越前鳥の子紙の材料は雁皮、その他の三つの材料は楮です。同じ楮という原材料を使っている三つのうち、石州半紙と細川紙の指定要件はほとんど変わりません。しかし、本美濃紙と比較すると違うところが幾つか出てきます。

specific way called "kagitsuke" or "sogitsuke" in which the edges of the bamboo are stripped diagonally and tied with strings as matching stripped sides each other. Techniques for making these tools are also recognized as one of the Selected Conservation Technique. Another difference is, with Hon-minoshi, the paper must be dried on a wooden board. With the other two, it may be dried either on a wooden board or on a stainless iron board.

Earlier, I mentioned that in order to be designated a skill as an intangible cultural property, you must meet one of three requirements. In the first case, for example, the focus is placed on the protection of supporting the artistic work. In the second one, the protection of the skill itself is very important.

There are many techniques within craft techniques. There are some that are highly valued because of their artistic assets. Some are protected because of the continuance of the technique. I believe that the good point of this system is that we can make use of these different specific characteristics.

We have been talking about important intangible cultural properties. There is another framework of protection of the intangible properties. That is the 'Intangible Cultural Properties that need to take measures such as documentation.' This is different from the designation system. It is a system by which intangible cultural properties other than important intangible cultural properties for which recording, documentation, preservation and exhibition are very important, are supported by public subsidy.

Let us take a look at the history of the law for the protection of cultural properties. The law for the protection of cultural properties was enacted in 1950. That was when, for the first time, the system for the protection of intangible cultural properties was made. But the framework at that point was different from what we have now. Because it was soon after the war, much of the money, for example, was put into

本美濃紙の場合には、竹簀でも、「かぎつけ」または「そぎつけ」の竹簀という、道具に関して細かな規定があります。本美濃紙では、竹同士のつなぎ目は竹の端っこをそぎ落としたもの同士を糸にかけていく、そぎつけという方法で作られた竹簀を使っています。このような欠かせない用具を作る技術も、選定保存技術として保護されているわけです。もう一つの違いは、石州半紙と細川紙では、乾燥するときに板干し、または鉄板干し、どちらでも可能としていますが、本美濃紙では板干しのみであるという点があります。

先ほど、重要無形文化財の技術の指定に関しては、三つの基準で評価をされる必要があるということをお話しました。一つ目の基準の場合には芸術活動の支援という保護の体制が必要となりますし、二つ目の基準の場合には技術保存の側面が強くなると考えられます。

工芸技術の中にはさまざまな技術があります。展覧会などに出して評価をされていくような作家性の高い技術もあれば、同じものを作り続けられるという職人性の高い技術もあります。これら、さまざまな技術の特性を受け止めながら保護していくことができるのが、この制度の良いところだと私は考えています。

今まで重要無形文化財の話をしてきましたが、無形文化財にはもう一つ保護の枠組みがあります。それが「記録作成等の措置を講ずべき無形文化財」です。これは重要無形文化財の指定・認定の制度とは異なるもので、重要無形文化財以外の無形文化財のうち、記録・保存・公開に関する経費の一部に公費による補助を受けているというものです。

では次に、現在の制度がどのように整えられてきたのかを追ってみたいと思います。先ほどもお話したとおり、昭和 25 (1950) 年に文化財保護法が制定されます。ここで初めて無形文化財の保護制度が作られます。しかし、このときはまだ現在の枠組みではありませんでした。戦争が終わってから間もない時期ですので、工房を整備するのにお金を出すなど、復興支援のような事業も見られます。このときに選定されている技術は、現在の選定保存技術のような、材料を作る技術なども多く含まれています。まだまだ、無形文化財として何を守っていくのか、どのような体制にしていくのかというのを模索

regenerating the studios. Techniques for making materials similar to including the Selected Conservation Techniques today were also recognized at this point. I think this was the period when they were still trying to find a system for protection and what was to be protected.

In 1954, we had the enactment of the system for protection of intangible cultural properties. This system became the base for the present system. Properties that were selected in 1950 were temporarily canceled and redesignated as important intangible cultural properties. At that time, techniques for making materials, were not subjects of the designation. Only private individuals were recognized. There is a fixed amount of subsidy that is given to individual holders now, but in 1954, the price was dependent on the different techniques. At this point, the system for the Intangible Cultural Properties that need to take measures such as documentation was established as well.

In 1968, the Agency for Cultural Affairs and the Council for the Protection of Cultural Properties were established. In 1971, projects for the documentation of craft techniques began. In 1975, this was a very important year. There was a big revision of the law for the protection of cultural properties; the recognition of the holding groups of intangible cultural properties and the system for the Selected Conservation Techniques were made (Fig. 4). In 2004, folk techniques were also included in the protection system.

We can see that there have been many attempts and many changes in order to protect the cultural properties, which are very important for our country. It is very difficult to understand the difference between folk techniques and craft techniques. For example, for folk techniques, we have techniques such as digging a well, cormorant fishing. It is likely that differences between folk techniques and craft techniques will continue to be studied from now on.

している時代と言えます。

そして 4 年後、昭和 29 (1954) 年に重要無形文化財の制度が創設されます。この制度が、現在の制度の基礎になります。このとき 4 年前に制定されたものは一斉に全部解除され、改めて重要無形文化財として指定し直されましたが、材料を作る技術等は指定対象になりませんでした。この時点では、技術を指定するのは同じでも、個人しか認定できませんでした。また、今は個人の場合には年間 200 万円の予算が充てられますが、それも技術によって金額が違いました。このときに、記録措置を講ずべき無形文化財の制度も一緒に整えられています。

昭和 43 (1968) 年になると文化庁が発足し、文化財保護審議会が設置されます。昭和 46 (1971) 年に工芸技術記録の映画事業が開設されます。そして昭和 50 (1975) 年、この年は工芸技術においてはキーポイントの年です。なぜならば、文化財保護法の大改正があったからです。それは、無形文化財の保持団体の認定がつくられたこと、もう一つが選定保存技術の制度が整えられたことです。そして今の形に整えられるわけです(Fig. 4)。平成 16 (2004) 年には工芸技術だけではなく、民俗技術についても保護が拡大されます。

1975年

- Expansion of the system for Buried Cultural Properties
- Expansion of the system for Folk Cultural Properties
- Establishment of the system of Preservation Districts for Groups of Traditional Buildings
- Establishment of the system for protection of Conservation Techniques for Cultural Properties
- Establishment of the system of Collective Certification and Group Certification of Intangible Cultural Properties

Fig. 4 The key points of the revision of the law in 1975 1975 年の改正内容の概要

このように見ると、我が国の文化財と考えられるものの多くを、とにかく守るために試行錯誤した歩みと考えることができると思います。民俗技術と工芸技術の違いはすごく分かり難いと思います。現在、民俗技術で指定されているものを挙げてみると、井戸を掘る技術、鵜飼いなどがあります。今後、民俗技術と工芸技術の違いについても研究が進んでいくと思います。

Let us look at the documentation on craft techniques. The finished product may be kept in a storage. On the other hand, intangible cultural properties cannot be stored in museums. If there is no one to make them, then that technique is gone forever. What we want to protect as intangible cultural heritage is the process by which the object is made. Since 1950, the agency has been keeping written records and also collecting processed samples. There is written documentation about handmade paper, compiled in 1971. It gives detailed information about the materials, the tools that were used and the kinds of paper that were produced throughout Japan.

From 1971, the government established a system to preserve the techniques as film and the objects that were made as a result. It is the system of The Agency for Cultural Affairs. The purpose is to make a record of the skills that are difficult to understand only by writing or by photos and to make them useful in the protection of intangible cultural properties and also as teaching materials and research materials.

This is a list of documentation films for handmade washi such as *Hon-minoshi* and *Najio Gampi-shi* (Fig. 5, Fig. 6). It is in DVD form. The first two films are individual recognitions, and the rest three are the records of group recognitions. *Echizen Torinokoshi* was designated as an intangible cultural property two years ago, but the filming documentation has not been completed yet.

例えば・・/重要無形文化財分野(認定者・認定団体)

Examples of documentation films, Important Intangible Cultural Properties (individual recognition, group recognition)

『手漉和紙』昭和49年、日経映像、日・英/越前奉書(八代目 岩野市兵衛)

Echizen-hoshoshi (Iwano Ichibei, the eighth): "Tesuki-washi; handmade paper", 1974, Nikkei Visual Images, Inc

 『名塩雁皮紙-谷野剛惟のわざ-』平成25年、毎日映画社、 日・英/名塩雁皮紙(谷野剛惟)

Najio Gampi-shi (Mr. Tanino Takenobu): "Najio Gampi-shi The Art of TANINO Takenobu", 2013, Mainichi Productions

Fig. 5 Documentation films for handmaide washi (individual recognition) 手漉和紙分野の記録映画(各個認定) では、工芸技術の記録について考えていきたいと思います。出来上がった作品というのは収蔵庫に収めることができます。一方、無形文化財は博物館の収蔵庫に収めることはできません。作る人がいなくなったら、それでその技術は絶えてしまうわけです。無形文化財として守りたいと考えているのは作られていくまでの過程なわけです。そこで昭和25(1950)年からは、文書による記録、そして工程見本の製作が行われてきました。手漉和紙に関しては昭和46(1971)年にまとめられた記録があります。内容は道具について詳細に記録したものや、全国の産地の情報などです。

昭和 46 (1971) 年からは、映像で技術を残し、作られたものを買い上げるシステムが出来上がります。これは文化庁の制度ですが、重要無形文化財に指定されている工芸技術の記録映画を企画制作しています

(https://www.bunka.go.jp/seisaku/bunkazai/hogofuk yu/kirokueiga/index.html 2020年11月29日)。その目的は、文書や写真では捉えにくい工芸技術の工程を映像によって分かりやすく記録すること、無形文化財の保存に役立てること、後継者養成のための教材・研究素材として活用することです。

手漉和紙の分野では 5 本の記録映画が作られています (Fig. 5、Fig. 6)。本美濃紙や個人の認定の名塩雁皮紙などがあります。越前奉書と名塩雁皮紙の 2 本は個人の認定者の記録、残りの 3 本がグループの団体の記録です。越前鳥の子紙は 2 年前に指定がされましたが、まだ記録がとられていません。

・『細川紙』平成25年、グループ現代、日・英/細川紙(細川紙技 術者協会)

Hosokawa-shi (Hosokawa-shi Craftsmen's Association): "Hosokawa-shi", 2013, GROUP GENDAI FILMS CO.,LTD., Hosokawa-shi Craftsmen's Association

『本美濃紙』平成23年、毎日映画社、日・英/本美濃紙(本美濃紙保存会)

Hon-monoshi (Association for the Preservation of Hon-minoshi Papermaking) : "Hon-minoshi", 2011, Mainichi Productions

• 『石州半紙』平成13年、日経映像、日/石州半紙(石州半紙技術 者会)

Sekishu-banshi (Sekishu-Banshi Craftsmen's Association) : "Sekishu-banshi" , 2001, Nikkei Visual Images, Inc.

Fig. 6 Documentation films for handmaide washi (group recognition) 手漉和紙分野の記録映画 (保持団体認定) I would like to show you the DVD on Mr. Tanino Takenobu, who was recognized individually. He is a holder of the *gampi* paper technique. He was recognized as the only *gampi* papermaker who was able to work with different types of people in different types of work.

- Q: I am wondering about the support of recording if you are worried about whether it gets out of date.
- A: You mean about how the films are kept? Films are more preservable than digital data. But films have to be kept in a good condition. Otherwise, they will deteriorate. We, at the institute, have workshops on considering what is the best way to preserve these films and how these films should be made. There are many issues that need to be answered. I am sorry we cannot give you good information on that point.
- Q: Do you have any national program that will encourage young people to apply for traditional craft techniques?
- A: The program for teaching young people is included in the subsidy of the agency. For a group, the group gives out a budget for transmitting techniques to younger people.

Let us take a look at the film. Please notice in particular the tools and the materials.

(Viewing the DVD of *Najio Gampi-shi*: the art of Tanino Takenobu)

This is the type of film that made it to the Agency for Cultural Affairs. I ask that you look, in particular, at the materials and the tools. As I have said repeatedly, Mr. Tanino is an individual recognition. He is given the freedom to change his materials and the tools. If the finished product is the same, then it does not matter what tool is used, someone may say, but I personally do not think so. The person who is recognized individually decides, using his moral

今回は、個人で認定された谷野武信さんの DVD を見たいと思います。谷野武信さんは、兵庫県の名塩に伝承される雁皮紙の技術保持者です。箔打紙など、さまざまな名塩雁皮紙の製作ができる唯一の現役の技術者として認定されました。

- Q: 記録映画について、仕様が旧式になってしまう可能性などについて、どのようにサポートしているのですか。
- A: どういうふうにサポートするというのは、CDとか、フィルムの保存状況ということですか?フィルムの状態のほうがデジタルデータより保存性が担保できると考えられています。ただ、フィルムは状態がいいところで保存しておかないと劣化するわけです。研究所の私の部署でも、映像をどのように保存していくのか、どういうふうに撮っていくのかをテーマとして研究会も開催していますが、課題が多いのが現状です。良い情報が提供できなくて申し訳ないです。
- Q: 若い人たちが伝統的な技法を継承していこうと いうためのナショナルプログラムみたいなもの はありますか。
- A: 文化庁の補助事業には後継者育成事業が含まれています。保持団体認定の中にも後継者育成事業というものが入っています。

では、映像を見ていきたいと思います。使われている 材料とか道具に注目しながら見ていただきたいです。

(DVD『名塩雁皮紙-谷野剛惟のわざ-』視聴)

このような記録が文化庁では作られています。初めに、材料とか用具に注目していただきたいというお話をしました。何度も言うように、谷野氏は個人の認定者なので材料や用具は変えても指定は変わりません。それによって咎められることはないわけです。同じものができればどんな道具を使ってもいいのかと考える人もいるかもしれませんが、私自身はそうは思っていません。現在、重要無形文化財の個人の認定者の方は、個人のモラルによってどういうものを作っていくかを決めています。ただ、技術者のみなさんは、自分はできるだけ伝統的なものを保持したいと思われていると思います。

principles, what is to be used and for what purpose. I think the craftsmen wish to do as much as possible in order to transmit the traditional technique in the traditional material.

It is getting very, very difficult to get gampi, the raw material, and also the dispersant noriutsugi. Neither gampi nor noriutsugi can be cultivated. It has to come from the wild. That is a big problem. For example, with noriutsugi, once you strip the skin of the plant, it takes 20 years for the plant to revive. Sometimes in that 20 years, the mountain itself may be redeveloped or a tunnel made, and then all the plants are gone. It is very difficult to get the materials.

Right now, most of them have stock, but it is getting more difficult to get a stock. When it comes time to no stock, then how to protect the material and the technique is another problem.

- Q: Would designation automatically go to his son now that he has taken over?
- A: Basically, you will not be designated because you are a son.
- Q: Even though he does the same materials, palette?
- A: Regarding to the actual operation, it is better to ask the agency. In my understanding, in cases of individual recognitions, if the person passes away, that technique is annulled. The system requires that the person himself have the technique. What is more important is that the person has the technique, not that the person is the son of a person who had the technique.
- Q: When you mentioned that the water they used comes from the mountains, does the protection also include the area of the environment, or it is very difficult to protect?
- A: No. There is no system to protect the environment. It is a difficult problem. You know that when there was a big earthquake in 2011, there were areas that you could not

材料の面でも問題があって、雁皮が全然手に入らなくなっています。もちろんネリのノリウツギなども安定的な供給には課題があります。これらは、野生のものを採って使われてきました。栽培されている材料でないというのは、とても大きな課題です。例えば、ノリウツギは、樹皮(内皮)を使うのですが、剥いでから 20 年程度は再生しないと言われています。その間に山をなくす工事が行われたり、トンネルを通したりと様々な環境の変化があります。すると、手に入れるのが困難な材料になってきてしまうのです。

現在作られている技術者の方は、多くの方がストックを持っています。しかし、近い将来、ストックもストックできない時期が来てしまう。そういうときに材料をどのように保護していくのかが大きな課題と言えます。

- **Q**: 例えば息子さんが跡を継いだら、認定は息子さん に回るのですか。
- A: 基本的には、息子だからといって認定されるわけではありません。
- Q: 同じ材料で同じ道具でやっていてもですか?
- A: 実際の運用については文化庁に問い合わせをしていただいた方が確実だと思いますが、私の認識では、個人の場合は亡くなるとその技術は解除です。指定・認定の会議においては、その人がちゃんとした技術を持っていること、その人自身が評価されていなければなりません。誰々の息子さんというよりは、その人自身が技術者として評価される必要があると考えられていると思います。
- Q: 山からの水を使うこともあるとお話しされていましたが、そのエリアの環境を守る制度はありますか?
- A: 現状、ありません。とても難しい問題です。皆 さんもご存じのとおり、東日本大震災がありました。そのときに、放射能汚染で立ち入れない 山が出てきました。これは陶芸の例ですが、釉 薬に自分の山の砥山石という石を採っていました。ところが、放射能汚染の一番スポットの高い地域なので、作り手の人たちがそこに入ることができなくなってしまった。有事の際の援助は、まだ確立していません。

go into because of the radiation problem. This is a case of ceramic. They were using stones from the radioactive faded area for glazing. People who worked to get the stones could not go in because it was a very highly radiated area. There is no support to solve this problem.

This is a system that the Agency for Cultural Affairs is involved in. There is a more industrial designation system, called Traditional Craft Products, that is done by the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry. There were many areas where are related to the Traditional Craft Products in the earthquake affected regions. The law for the Traditional Craft Products changed because of that. There is no system to support that type of change with regard to Important Intangible Cultural Properties.

You talked about the water from the mountain area and the environment. That is a big problem. For example, there is some difference in the texture of the paper or sometimes with textiles for which the dye product is different from what it used to be. Or, for example, if a big condominium is being built, then it will affect the quality of water, and the environment surrounding the water would change. There is no system for protecting things like that. We are still looking for ways to solve these problems as changing times come along.

Often too with firewood and things like that. For example, when you burn firewood and there is somebody that comes to live in that area, they may complain about smoke coming out from the fire. When new people come into that area, it becomes a little bit difficult to continue their work. These are problems that must be met.

今回、私が説明してきたのは、文化財保護法という文化庁のシステムになります。もう一つ、日本には伝統的工芸品という経済産業省がやっている、商業的な経済活動としての支援があります。東日本大震災の被災地では伝統的工芸品がとても多く、伝統的工芸品はそれによって法律が変わりました。ただし、例えば文化庁で指定されている重要無形文化財で災害の被害があった場合、現在ではサポートするシステムは整っているとは言い切れません。

先ほども山の水と仰っていましたが、本当に そういうことがよくある問題になってきてい ます。何か紙の質がおかしいとか、染め物など は何か同じ色に染まらないとか。隣でマンショ ンを建てる際に水のくみ上げをしてしまった りすると、水の環境が変わってしまう。そうい うところに関する支援がまだ全然ない状態で す。時代の流れに合わせて、どういうふうに対 応していくのかを模索中です。

あと、薪を使ったりするものもよくありますが、隣に人が引っ越してきて洗濯ものを干しだすと、苦情が出てしまって続けられなくなってしまうこともあります。近くに人が引っ越してくるとなかなか継続できないというのは、よくある例です。技術者のみなさんは、様々な課題と向き合いながら、どのように続けていくか考えています。



Fig. 7 Lecture 講義

There is another film on *kozo* that I would like to show you. It is a film that I made last year when we went to look at the materials used for *Sekishu-Banshi*.

This is the *kozo* farm. The farmer started growing *kozo* after he retired from his former work. In Sekishu, people make their own *kozo*. Some papermakers help, but mainly the farmers nearby cultivate *kozo*. They are able to supply their own material, which is a very strong point for Sekishu.

He is the president of the association for *Sekishu-Banshi*. He uses these electric scissors instead of a sickle because there were accidents that young people cut their leg accidentally. Times have changed and young people are not accustomed to using sickles. He uses tools like these for safety so that the young trainees who are learning papermaking will not be injured.

What is good of this farm is that they have cut off all the extra branches, so that the *kozo* tree and the *kozo* bark is in ideal condition. He is a very hard worker, and he goes to the farm every day to check on the trees. Daily maintenance is a very important factor in getting good *kozo*.

It is a very difficult job to try to raise the seedlings. Usually, once they plant *kozo*, they can get the bark for maybe 15 years or so. It is a perennial plant. What is wonderful about Sekishu is that they have people who can support cultivating *kozo*.

Also, maybe it has something to do with raising successors. In Sekishu, they have the elementary school children raise *kozo* plants. Until now, they use the Sekishu paper for the graduation certificate. But now, there will come a day when children will be using paper made from the *kozo* plant that they themselves raised for the diploma. There is a hope that if children learn what they are making in their area and what the product they are making is used for, they will be able to support the traditional technique more.

Sekishu-Banshi is used basically for the restoration of folding screens but it is also used for a

これからもう一つ楮の映像を見ていただきます。これ は私が去年の12月に、指定の保持団体で認定になって いる石州半紙の楮の刈り取りに行った際の映像です。

これは石州半紙に使われる楮の畑です。農家さんは定年退職をしてから楮の栽培を始めました。もともと石州という産地では、原料である楮も作られてきました。紙漉きの方も手伝いますが、近隣の農家さんがメインで作っています。楮の栽培をしていない産地もあるので、石州のように自分のところで材料の供給ができるというのは、材料不足である現在ではとても大きいことです。

今映っているのが石州半紙の会長です。会長は鎌ではなく電動鋏を使っています。これはなぜかというと、この鋏を使わないと鎌で足を切ってしまう研修生もいるからだそうです。時代が変わり、若い人達は鎌を使い慣れていません。紙漉きをする後継者を育成する中で、けがをさせないために、このような道具を使用しているそうです。

こちらの畑の何がすごいというと、芽かきがちゃんと されている点です。芽かきというのは、脇芽を摘み取り 枝葉が少なく真っすぐ伸ばすために行います。本当に働 き者で、あそこら辺はやったからといって毎日のように 見回りをしながら、芽を取っている。そういう毎日毎日 の欠かさぬ手入れによって良い楮になるそうです。

新植のための苗を育てるというのも大切な技術です。 楮は多年草なので、もちろん品種によりますが、1回苗 を植えたらその後、大体15年から20年ぐらいは刈り取 りができると言われています。石州のすごいところは、 このような楮を作ってくれる理解者を周りに増やして いるところです。

また、先ほどの後継者育成とも少し話が関わるかもしれませんが、石州では小学校で小学生に楮を育てさせます。今までは卒業証書に紙を漉くだけでしたが、これからは自分で育てた楮から自分の卒業証書を作るという取り組みに変わっています。自分のところの産地で、どういう材料を使ってどういうものができているのかというのを、子どもたちに教育として教えていく。その中で、できれば担い手を育てていきたいという希望があります。

石州半紙というのは屏風の修理にも使われています。 一方、修理以外の需要もあります。石見神楽というお祭 snake figure that appears in a local festival. That is another way that the paper is used. In other words, the paper is used for something that is done in their daily lives, not something that is done outside their living areas, but something for the local area is important. The people who make the paper themselves are often participants in the festivals. The relationship between <code>Sekishu-Banshi</code> and the local festivals is a way of increasing the desire for growing <code>kozo</code>.

Sekishu does not make *kozo* for *Sekishu-Banshi* only. They also ship the raw material to other areas as well. The groups strip the bark and send it out to different areas. They were doing the work of steaming and stripping the bark; I went and looked at that work too. They have been doing this work for long years. The problem is that there is no one to succeed the work in the next generation. Their children go outside the area to work. In other words, they have not been doing this work themselves. That makes it more difficult if they decide to do on this work after they have retired. It is very difficult to do for someone who has not been in this job. They do this maybe about four times a day.

The tools for steaming differ from family to family, even in Sekishu. The wood also changes from time to time. They strip the bark. They work on all the branches that they have steamed. I wanted you to know what happens behind the stage of making the paper. We cannot have the raw material unless we have people like these working.

The Agency for Cultural Affairs has started a project that takes into consideration this type of background work. In the budget for the procurement of raw materials, they also included financial matters that are necessary for this type of work. They are trying to do their best to keep the traditional work. There are about eight people working here. Once somebody becomes ill in the family, then that person cannot come to work anymore.

They ship this black bark as it is without further

りがあり、それには「ジャ」という蛇が出てきて、ジャの蛇は石州半紙の紙から作られます。それはある意味、 修理に使えるような紙の漉き返しとかで作ることができます。他地域で使われるだけでなく、地域の中に需要があるということは重要だと思います。紙を漉いている方にも神楽の舞手の方もいたりするので、石州半紙と石見神楽というものの関係により、地域の中で楮の栽培を求めることにつながっていると思います。

石州は、石州半紙のためだけの楮を作っているわけではありません。この地域は原材料を他にも出す産地でもあるわけです。村の組合、寄せみたいなところのグループが、剥いだ状態である黒皮とか白皮にして出荷しています。この映像は、ちょうど訪問した時に、組合で蒸して剥ぐ作業をしていたので、撮影させてもらったものです。皆さん、この仕事を長年されてきたベテランの方々です。この次の世代は外に働きに出てしまっています。つまり、この仕事をずっと一緒にやってきてはいないわけです。それは、もし定年してからやろうと思ってもとても経験のないことをやることが難しいという問題へとつながります。一回会社員をやっている方がこの生活をするのは、ちょっと難しいかもしれないと思います。1日に大体4回ぐらい、この作業を繰り返されます。

石州でもそれぞれの蒸し道具は家によって異なり、使 う木材も変わっているようです。蒸しあがったものを剥 いでいきます。ひっくり返すように剥ぐのが石州の剥ぎ 方の特徴と言われています。蒸しあがったものを全部剥 ぐわけです。紙を漉く技術もすごく大変ですが、その手 前側の作業もぜひ見ていただきたいと思います。この方 たちのこの作業がない限り、原材料の確保はないわけで す。

今年から文化庁でも、そのようなところに注目した事業がやっと始まりました。実は石州半紙の団体の後継者育成事業等の予算の中には、原材料を知るために畑を借りる予算も含まれています。そういうところまで幅広く支援をしながら、どうにか手漉き和紙の技術を継続させていこうとしているわけです。大体8名ぐらいが集まってやっていますが、一回ご家族が病気をしたりすると、それ以降は作業に参加できなくなります。

この方たちは、白皮でなく黒皮で出荷されている人たちです。楮は白皮で出荷をして初めてお米と同じ収入が

stripping off. *Kozo*, once it is stripped into a white bark, is equal to the amount of money that you get for shipping rice. In other words, to ship the bark in this half black condition is not worth as much as rice is. Even this work itself is time-consuming and effort-consuming.

The changes in the value system and the changes in the labor system are a big problem in Japan. This problem does not appear so much because they still have enough stock at the moment. Once that stock is gone, it is too late, probably. It is very difficult to cultivate *kozo* for the people who have not have experience of cultivating crops. The transmission of the technique from person to person is very important.

What we, at the institute, can do is probably a big issue. What we can do at least for now is to make films like this to use as a way of advocating. It is very important to document the present condition. This is because intangible cultural properties are things that change with time. In the past, I used to research the kimonos of the Edo period. We can tell the year of that particular kimono, for example, because there are characteristic points to watch out for. If we keep a record, then we can maintain a paper record of today. We can see why the technique was transmitted in Japan and what significance the choice of materials and tools had or have on this particular product. I think we need to film these and consider them in order to transmit to the next generations the process and the products themselves and their importance.

- Q: I am just wondering whether the DVDs that you have are available for purchase.
- A: You can order the DVD by Internet. Go from the website of the agency to the Craft Technique Documentary.

得られると言われています。ただし、この段階でもすご く手間がかかり、時間もかかります。

日本の高度経済成長期における価値観や労働環境の変化は、日本の中で大きな課題です。皆さんストックがあるので、なかなか表面的には見えてきませんが、ストックがなくなるときにはもう遅いのです。楮等の農作物は、育てたことのない人がはじめるのはとても困難です。人から人へのわざの継承というのがとても大切だと思います。

では研究所やわれわれは何ができるのかというのを 考えたときに、このわざを記録するということが一つで きることではないかと考えています。今の記録を忠実に 取っておくということがとても大切なことだと思いま す。それは、無形文化財は変化するものだからです。私 は昔、江戸時代の着物とかの勉強をしていました。特徴 的な技術や技法があるから、その時代が分かるわけで す。そういうところを記録していることで、今の時代の 紙の記録も残っていくと思います。なぜこの技術が日本 に伝承されてきたのか、そして材料や用具を選ぶことが その技術においてどんな意義を持つものであるか、そう いうことをきちんと検証して、後世へぜひ守り伝えてい くものを考えていく必要があると思います。

- Q: DVD は買えますか。
- A: DVD は買えます。文化庁のホームページを参照 ください。



Fig. 8 Lecture 講義

5 Brushes

刷毛

KOBAYASHI Brush Shop

TANAKA Shigemi, TANAKA Kohei ¹

I would like to talk about brushes today. First, we would like to talk about the process of making brushes. Let us take a look at a video on the making of brushes and we will talk about the process of making *noribake*.

The first step is to boil the hair used in the brushes (Fig. 1). Through this process, we can straighten the hair and remove any oiliness from it. After we boil the hair, we dry them out in the sun. Then, the next step is to sort out the pieces of hair (Fig. 2). This is horsetail hair, and what we do is we sort them based on the different qualities of the hair. There are different levels of *noribake*, and the sorting is done to construct these different levels.

Then, we adjust the tips of the hair (Fig. 3). The tip of the hair of the horse tail tapers off. The tip of the brush is very important. If we use scissors to adjust the tip, then the tip will disappear. We have to adjust the tip without cutting the hair. A horse's tail has both long hair and short hair. If we cut the hair, then the length of the hair will be varied. So, what we do is we adjust the length as per the tip of the hair. So, we align the tips of the hair by using a comb. Then, we cut this end. As a result, we get hair of just about the same length.

We then mix the pieces of hair (Fig. 4, Fig. 5). The quality or characteristics of the hair differ from one horse to another. If we make brushes using only one horse's hair, then we get a varied brush. So, we mix several horses' hair to even out the characteristics or quality of the brush.

小林刷毛製造所

田中 重己、田中 宏平1

刷毛の講義をさせていただきたいと思います。よろしくお願いします。まず、糊刷毛の製造工程についてビデオを見ながら説明していきたいと思います。

1番目の作業として、刷毛の毛を煮ることから始まります (Fig. 1)。この作業をすることによって、毛の癖を真っすぐにして、毛の中の脂分を取り除きます。鍋で煮た毛を天日で乾かしたのち、仕分けという作業を行います。天日で乾かした馬のしっぽの毛を、等級に応じていい毛をより選んで仕分けをしていきます (Fig. 2)。この仕分けの作業で、様々な等級に分かれていきます。

続いて、先揃えという作業をします (Fig. 3)。馬のしっぽの毛というのは、毛の先がすっと真っすぐになっています。刷毛は毛先がとても重要です。ここで重要なのは、刷毛の毛先をはさみで切って揃えてしまうと、先がなくなってしまうので、切らないで先を揃えます。馬のしっぽの毛というのは、長い毛もあれば、短い毛もあります。例えば、ここで先の揃っていない毛の根元を切ってしまうと、長さがばらばらになってしまいます。そこで、この先揃えという作業では櫛でとかしながら、毛先を合わせていきます。先揃えをして、根元のほうを切断します。そうすることによって、大体同じ毛の長さの毛が揃うことになります。

次は、毛組・混毛という作業をします (Fig. 4、Fig. 5)。馬のしっぽの毛というのは、1 頭ごとに性質が違ってきます。例えば、馬それぞれの毛で刷毛をつくってしまいますと、それぞれ全く違った性質の刷毛が出来上がってきます。それで、ある程度、何頭かの馬の毛を混ぜる作業をやって性質を平均化します。

次は、火のしという作業です (Fig. 6)。アイロンで、 毛に対して熱を加えていきます。そうすることによっ て、毛の中の脂分を取り除くことと、毛の癖を真っすぐ にすることができます。

¹ The parentheses that are added at the end the paragraphs refer to the speakers other than Mr. TANAKA Kohei. (S) indicates Mr. TANAKA Shigemi.

段落末尾に()で田中宏平氏以外の発言者を示す。(S)は田中重己氏の発言を示す。



Fig. 1 Boiling 煮沸



Fig. 2 Sorting 仕分け



Fig. 3 Sorting 先揃え



Fig.4 Assembling, mixing 毛組・混毛



Fig.5 Mixing 混毛



Fig.6 Straightening with heat $\mathscr{KO} \ \ \, \bigcup$



Fig.7 Rubbing with ash 灰もみ



Fig.8 Suretori すれとり



Fig. 9 Sandwiching 板挟み



Fig. 11 Binding 綴じ

The next step is ironing (Fig. 6). These two board function like an iron and we apply heat to the hair. By applying heat, we can straighten the hair and remove any extra oiliness from it.

Then, we follow this rubbing-in-ash process (Fig. 7). When you iron the hair, oil comes out of it. So, we remove this oiliness by rubbing the hair in ash. This ash is made by burning rice husk.

Next step is called *suretori* (Fig. 8). At this point, there are still pieces of hair that do not have a tip or that have a tip that is facing the wrong direction, so we sort them out. If you use these brushes made with hair that does not have tips, for example, and apply paste to it, you will not be able to get a very straight line of paste. So, we use a small knife to get rid of the tipless hair and hair that is facing the wrong direction. When we use the knife, poor quality hair will stick to the knife and be removed. We will demonstrate some of these processes to you.

Now, we are going to assemble the brush. We are

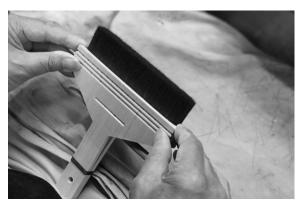


Fig. 10 Sandwiching 板挟み



Fig. 12 Finishing 仕上げ

続いて、灰もみという作業です (Fig. 7)。火のしをかけて熱を与えた毛は脂分が出てきます。これは、灰を使ってもんで、その脂分を取り除きます。この灰というのは、お米のもみ殻を燃やしてつくった灰です。

次は、すれ取りという作業です (Fig. 8)。先を揃えた 毛には、まだ毛先がない毛とか、逆毛になってしまった 毛とか、いろいろな毛が混ざっています。そういう先の ない毛とか逆毛をそのまま刷毛にしてしまいますと、糊 をつけたときに毛先が一直線に揃わないのです。そこで すれ取りという作業では、毛先のないものや逆毛になっ ている毛を、小刀を使って取り除く作業になります。小 刀の刃を入れることによって、毛先がないもの、あるい は逆毛が小刀に引っ掛かって出てきます。幾つかは後で 実演します。

刷毛を組み立てていきます。毛先のない毛を取った刷毛を、今度は板挟みという板に毛を挟んでいく作業になります (Fig. 9、Fig. 10)。組み立てた刷毛を三味線糸を使って綴じていきます (Fig. 11)。三味線糸というのは、絹の糸を撚り合わせたものです。この三味線糸は、水に濡れるとだんだん締まっていく性質があります。それで

going to sandwich the hair that has been sorted between two pieces of board (Fig. 9, Fig. 10). We use the string that is used in a *shamisen*, which is a musical instrument, in order to thread the brush hair. The *shamisen* thread is made by twining or twisting silk thread (Fig. 11). The string tends to tighten when it gets moist. That is the reason why we use this in order to thread the brush.

Then, we use a small knife to finish the brush (Fig. 12). This makes it easy for the person who is going to use the brush to work with it. The brush is now complete. That is a rough explanation of the process. Do you have any questions up to this point?

- Q: For the cooking of the hair at the beginning, do we only need water?
- A: Only water. Actually, we put the piece of hair in cold water, which we then bring to a boil. Following that, we cook it for 2 or 3 hours in the boiling water.
- Q: What materials are the bristles wrapped with before they are sandwiched?
- A: It is washi pasted with paste.

Let me show you a very simple demonstration. This is horse tail hair.

Every individual horse has hair of differing characteristics. A horse tail about this long consists of the hair of about 10 horses (Fig. 13). This would be about one horse. We collect all this horse hair. Horse hair is long, but we only use this very short hair. The long hair would be about 4 years old from the time it first grew. The shorter the hair, the shorter the period of the hair's life. (S)

- Q: What type of horse is used for the horse tail?
- A: For us, the horse that is raised in the Japanese climate works the best. In the past, they used farming horses, soldier's horses, and things like that. Nowadays, we use horse hair from

刷毛を綴じる糸として使われています。

綴じた刷毛を、今度は小刀を使って仕上げていきます (Fig. 12)。木端を丸めることによって、使う方が使い やすいように仕上げます。これで完成になります。以上 が大体大まかな作り方なのですけれども、ここまでで何 かご質問等ありますか?

- Q: 最初に毛を煮るときは、水だけですか。
- A: 水だけです。沸騰させる前に水から鍋に毛を入れて、沸騰させていきます。沸騰してから、大体2時間か3時間ぐらい煮ます。
- Q: 毛を板で挟む前に、何で巻いていますか。
- A: あれは、和紙を糊で合わせたものです。



Fig. 13 A bundle of horse tail hair 馬のしっぽの毛束

では、簡単な実演を行います。これは、馬のしっぽの 毛です。

馬にもバラエティーがありまして、1頭ごとにしっぽに癖があるのです。我々が使えるのは、もう少し長いのですけれども、ざっくり言えば、これで10頭ぐらいの馬なのです(Fig. 13)。初めて見る人は分からないですけれども、これで1頭ぐらい。それを集めたものなのです。皆さんが見る馬のしっぽは長いですよね、私たちが使うのは生え際の短い毛です。長いところで4年ぐらいたっていて、短いものは生えた期間が短い毛です。(S)

- **Q**: 馬の種類は、どういう馬がいいというのはある のですか。
- A: 日本の気候で育った馬が、我々の材料には一番 いいのです。昔は、農耕馬とか、乗る戎馬とか、 農作業とか、軍人が乗ったような馬を使ってい

racing horses that did not make it to the race. A traditional Japanese horse also exists, but they are quite few. So, to get a certain amount of hair, we use hair from racing horses. (S)

- Q: Can we only cut the horse's hair once to get the tips?
- A: Yes, once you have cut it, the hair no longer has a tip. You can thus only use it once.

First, we cut the hair into about 6 cm pieces and we sort them, mix them until it gets to about 5 to 6 cm in length. Then, when we make the brush. (S)



Fig. 14 Demonstration 実演

This is aligning the tip of the hair (Fig. 14). The length of hair in the bundle differs. It contains both long and short hair. That is why you have bundles of irregular length.

Most people would think that we cut the tips of hair in order to straighten it. (S)

But if we cut the hair with scissors then its tips will be gone. This is the way to align the tip without using scissors. Thus, this is an important process. If we cut here, the length will be varied. The tips should be aligned and then cut.

If the hair is long, it is difficult to align the tip, so we reduce its length. This hair is maybe three to four years old. The longer hair is thicker, firm, and little coarser. This hair is between one year to three years old. It is thinner and softer, but its tip is better than たのでしょうけれども、現在使用している毛は 競走馬の落第生のものです。日本ではそれ以外 の馬というと、道産子や木曽馬など産地はいろ いろあります。しかし、そういう馬はせいぜい何 十頭ですから、今みたいな量を稼ぐには、競走馬 の落第生を使うのです。(S)

- **Q**: 毛先を使うということは、馬の毛を 1 回使った ら終わりということですか。
- A: そうです。馬の毛先というのは、ここしかありません。1回切ってしまったら先はなくなってしま うので、ここしか使えないです。

我々は2寸と言うのですけれども、大体6cm ぐらいに切って、混ぜたり、いろいろすると、こ のぐらいの長さです。それで、刷毛にするとき は、揃えたものを切るのです。普通は6cm が5 cm ぐらいになったところで、刷毛に付けます。 (S)

これは、先揃えという作業になります (Fig.14)。この中にある毛の長さが全部違います。それでこのように段差になっています。

なぜこのようなことをお見せするかといいますと、刷 毛は毛を切りそろえて作るものだと思っている方が多 いと思います。(S)

しかし、はさみで切ってしまうと先がなくなってしまいます。でのすので、はさみを使わずに先を揃えます。 それで先揃えは大事な作業の一つなのです。例えば、このままで切ってしまうと長さが全部違ってしまいます。 先を揃えてからカットします。

長いと先を揃えるのが難しいので、短くします。これは3年から4年くらい生えた毛です。長いほうは毛が太くてコシが強く毛先が少し粗いです。こちらは1年から3年以内のものです。こちらのほうは毛が細くて柔らかいのですが、毛先はこちらのほうが良いです。色々な毛を先の状態やコシを見ながら混ぜ合わせます。その時々によって毛が柔らかかったり硬かったりしますので、バランスをとっていく必要があります。つまり、一番大事なのは毛先だということです。糊刷毛ですので、糊をつけるときに先端がそろっていることが重要です。もし毛先が揃っていないと、糊がうまく始末できませんから。

that of the other hair. We mix different types of hair. The hair also differs from year to year. We need to maintain a balance. The most important thing is aligning the tips. When we apply the paste, we want the tips to be in a straight line. If it is not aligned properly, the paste will not apply properly. There are many small details that have to be accounted for, which is why brushes are expensive. (S)

- Q: What is the average time taken for a *noribake* to be made?
- A: It is difficult to say how long, because there is the time taken for cooking and time spent waiting, but maybe it takes eight hours for one brush. However, they usually make it as a bundle of twenty. (S)
- Q: How long does the assembly take?
- A: About one hour to assemble this much. It takes about four hours for the ironing and four to five hours for the boiling, but we can do other things while ironing or boiling. (S)

For example, the boiling and sorting are done together in a batch. First, it being boiled, mixed, ironed and rubbed in ash. That is its condition. Then, we use that small knife to get rid of tipless hair like this.

- Q: Is there any other adhesive used besides the paste?
- A: In order to firm the root, we use adhesive

Let me show a demonstration of mixing. I do this type of process twice. The hair that got dropped and the tips of the hair are in varied directions. By rubbing it with wooden boards, the hair separates into two groups. Inside is the tip and outside is the root (Fig. 15). Then, we can use this again for making the brush.

The cuticle of the hair is in one direction. So, when you do that, the pieces of hair that have tips facing different directions get separated. This is something that people knew from the Edo period. The best 刷毛は高価なものですが、このように細かい手間がかかっていることをご理解いただけたらと思います。(S)

- **Q**: 糊刷毛を 1 本作るのに大体どのくらいの時間が かかりますか?
- A: 煮たり焼いたり待ち時間があったりと一概に何時間と言うのは難しいですが、おそらく8時間くらいかと思います。通常は20本分くらいをまとめて作業しています。(S)
- Q: 例えば揃える作業にはどのくらい時間がかかり ますか?
- A: このくらいの分量で1時間ほどでしょうか。アイロンかけるのに4時間ほどかかりますし、煮るのも4、5時間かかります。ただし、その間は別の作業ができます。(S)

毛を煮たり混ぜたりする作業はまとめて行います。初めに毛を煮て、仕分けをして、毛を混ぜて、火のしをかけて、灰もみまで行います。そこから、すれ取りをしていきます。

- Q: 糊以外に、何か接着剤は使うのですか。
- A: 根元の毛を固めるために接着剤を使います。

次に、毛混ぜの実演をします。この作業は2回行います。作業中に落ちた毛がありますが、落ちた毛は、毛の 先がばらばらになっていますので、その先を寄せます。 板でこすることによって、真ん中が毛の先になって、外 側が根元になります(Fig.15)。またこれも刷毛の材料と して使います。



Fig. 15 Demonstration 実演

practice is not to drop too many pieces. (S)

Hair is getting more and more difficult to procure nowadays.

This would be maybe a little lower in grade. (S)



Fig. 16 Combs 櫛

- Q: Is the comb that is used special?
- A: It is made of an alloy of tin and zinc.
- Q: Do the teeth of the comb have gaps of different lengths between them?
- A: Yes, the gaps between the teeth are of different lengths. There are different kinds of combs (Fig. 16). Originally, they were straight like this, and with continued use, it becomes that way due to wear. This is the most worn out one, but this is also the easiest one to use. We also have ones with very fine teeth. That is for the final finishing. The rougher ones are used when we first comb the hair.

The reason for the alloy being used is its softness. If it is too hard, it will damage the hair. If the comb is made of the tin alone, it would be too soft. So, we use an alloy of tin and zinc. (S)

- Q: Is the comb customized?
- A: No. There are not too many people who can make this comb nowadays.

The people who make the brushes are decreasing. The people who make the tools for making the brushes are also decreasing. The demand is not great, but it takes significant labor and is sometimes not worth it. So, the trouble to make this related to its cost. (S)

毛のキューティクルはうろこ状になっていて、うろこは先のほうへ重なっているのです。このように重なっている時に髪をこすると外へ逃げるのです。だから、先のほうは中で、根っこが外に分かれてきます。これは江戸時代にはわかっていました。できたらあんまり落とさないほうがいいのですけれど、落とした毛も無駄にはなりません。(S)

今、毛がだいぶ貴重になってきていますので、無駄に できないのです。

はっきり言って、これはちょっとグレードをワンラン ク下げた素材です。(S)

- Q: 使っている櫛は、特別なものなのですか。
- A: これの材料は洋銀、錫と真鍮の合金になります。
- Q: 歯と歯の間の幅は違いますか。
- A: いろいろなものがあるのですが、もともとはまっすぐで、使っていくうちにだんだん減ってきています (Fig. 16)。毛をとかすにはこの最も歯が減っている櫛が一番とかしやすいです。細かいのもあり、これは毛先の仕上げといいますか、整えるときに使います。目の粗いものは、初めに毛をそのままとかす際に使います。

なぜ、錫と真鍮かというと、あまり硬いと毛を 痛めてしまうのです。錫は一番柔らかい金属で す。ただし、あまり柔らかいと使い物にならない。 錫は一番柔らかいほうですから、錫だけでも全然 駄目なのです。(S)

- Q: ということは、オーダーメイドですか?
- A: オーダーメイドではなく、昔はこれをつくってく れる人がいたのですけれども、今は数少なくなっ てしまっています。

日本では、こういう道具を使うのは、筆屋さんと、われわれ刷毛屋くらいです。筆屋さんも、我々も減ってしまっているものですから、いくらにも商売にならない。これは、鉄鋸でひいて作りますから、なかなか手間が掛かる。しかしその割に数が出ませんし、値段もそれほどしませんので、手間がかかる割には中々難しい仕事です。(S)



Fig. 17 Demonstration 実演

This is the next process where they separate the pieces of hair that do not have tips (Fig. 17).

About 30 to 40 years ago, we could do this process in maybe 15 to 20 minutes. Now, it takes an hour because we do not have access to good hair so much. In the past, you could choose from 1000 horses and select the best quality hair, but nowadays we only have like 100 horses from which hair can be obtained. So, the quality is also going down. (S)

- Q: How does the knife pick up the tip-less hair? What is the mechanism there?
- A: Good hair is very straight. It will slip. However, hair that does not have a tip gets cut. When you put the knife in, it will stick to the knife. Good hair will sway with the knife, but bad hair will get stuck. It is not good, so there is no tip on that one (Fig. 18).

If you try it, you will understand. The hair that sticks does not have a tip, even it may appear to have one. (S)

- Q: Can you use this hair?
- A: Yes, we use it. For example, the hair is thick and stiff enough, so we mix it for a *goma-nadebake*, which gives a brush its stiffness. (S)
- Q: How long does it take to become a full-fledged brush maker?
- A: I have been doing this for 20 years and I have

これから、すれ取りと言う毛先のない毛を取っていく 工程を行います (Fig. 17)。

材料の毛がなくなってきていて、30 年か 40 年前はこの作業が大体 15 分か 20 分で終わったのですが、今は 1時間かかっています。昔は仕入れの際に 1000 頭ぐらいの馬からいい毛を選んだものが買えたのですが、今は 100 頭ぐらいから選ぶようになっているため、品質が昔から比べるとかなり落ちてしまっています。(S)

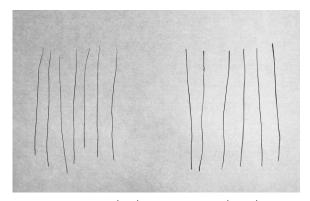


Fig.18 Good hairs (left) and tipless hair (right) 毛先のある毛 (左) と毛先のない毛 (右)

- Q: 小刀が毛先のない毛を拾い上げるメカニズムは、 どうなっているのですか。
- A: 毛先のあるいい毛はすっとしているので、小刀を 毛に入れても滑って出てこないのですが、毛先の ない、切れている毛は小刀を入れていくとなびか ないで引っ掛かります (Fig. 18)。

毛を握って刃物を入れるとやってみれば分かります。引っかかって出てくる毛は、先があるようで先がないのです。(S)

- Q: 駄目な毛はどうするのですか?
- A: 混ぜるなどしてまた使います。刷毛にする場合も あります。ある程度毛が太いので腰を出すために ゴマ撫刷毛に使用したりします。(S)
- Q: 一人前になるのにどのぐらいかかりますか。
- A: 私は20年やっているのですけれども、まだまだ なのです。

仕事は、本当にすごい細かくて。一番難しい仕 事はさっきやっていた仕分けです。(S)

- Q: 次に仕事をやってくださる方はいらっしゃるのですか。
- A: 息子がおりますが、まだ1歳10カ月なのでやる

still not mastered it.

There are so many processes involved. The sorting is the most difficult work. (S)

- Q: Is there next generation?
- A: My son is a 1-year-old. I am not sure if he is going to succeed me.

I have been using these combs for about 1 year, 10 years, maybe 40 years. I have enough combs in stock. So, it is okay, but if my grandson takes up this profession, it might be difficult to get combs at the time. (S)

- Q: So you have to buy it now? The knife too? Do we have to keep stock?
- A: The knife can be made because there are blacksmiths. However, with combs, the percentage of the combination in the alloy is very tricky. (S)

We cannot make a brush without this comb.

We can probably find a substitute for the knife,
but not for the comb. It is a very important tool.

Let us talk about the materials. These are all hair from various animals (Fig. 19). This is deer hair. It is used for *mizubake*, the water brush. This is the body hair of the horse, which is used for *noribake*. This is the hair from the ear of a cow.

- Q: What do they use this hair from the ear of a caw for?
- A: We do not use this. This is just for you to see.
 (S)
- Q: In Europe, this one is for gold leaf. To take and apply on furniture, for example.
- A: This is very expensive hair. (S)

We use human hair for urushi, and we use that same thing for gold leaf.

- Q: Is there any hair that is particularly difficult to work with?
- A: Maybe deer hair. It slips easily, but after it has been rubbed in ash, it does not slip as much. In

かどうかは分かりません。

櫛も、1年ほどしか使っていないものから、10年や40年ほど使っている櫛もあります。今は在庫があるからいいのですが、次の世代がやる頃にはもうないかもしれません。(S)

- **Q**: 今のうちに買いだめをしておかないといけませんね。小刀も同じ状況ですか。
- A: 小刀については、刃物屋さんに頼めばやってくれます。櫛のほうは、合金のスズと真鍮の混ぜ具合が難しいようです。(S)

この櫛がないと刷毛は作れません。ほかのものは、なんとか代用できていますが、これがないと 仕事ができない、大事な道具です。



Fig.19 Various animal hair for the materials 材料となる動物の毛

材料について説明します。これが動物の毛です(Fig. 19)。これは、鹿の毛で水刷毛に使います。これは馬のおなかの毛で糊刷毛などに使います。面白いものは、これは牛の耳のところに生えている毛です。

- Q: 牛の耳の毛は何に使うのですか。
- A: これは皆さんにお見せするために持ってきたので、刷毛には使いません。(S)
- Q: ヨーロッパでは、金箔を取って家具などに貼りつけるときに使います。箔そのものを取って、くっつけるときに使います。
- A: これは、とても高い毛です。(S) 漆刷毛は女性の髪の毛を使うのですけれど、 日本では金箔を貼るのにも女性の髪の毛を使っ てやっています。
- Q: 特に仕事がしにくいタイプの毛はありますか。

its regular condition, it is difficult to work with. However, once it has been rubbed in ash, it is easier to work with.

- Q: I noticed one of the brushes is made with raccoon dog hair. Is that hard to work with?
- A: It is soft, but not so difficult to work with. (S)

This is plant hair for *nadebake*, the smoothing brush. It is formosa palm (*Arenga*). This plant grows in Southeast Asia. It grows very long, like maybe 2 meters high. This is hemp palm (*Trachycarpus fortunei*). It is a type of coconut plant. It is the fiber of the bark of a palm tree. This is wild boar. It is used for hairbrushes. We use the root. This is weasel. The sushi maker uses it to apply soy sauce.

These are the brush boards made of cypress (Fig. 20). This is a *shamisen* thread. We use them when we tie the brush (Fig. 21). It is a twined silk thread. When you cook rice cakes, you get a very viscous liquid. The silk thread is twisted and coated with that liquid. This is the ash that is used to remove the oiliness from treated hair. It is burned rice husk. We make a pile of rice husk that is about 170 to 180 cm tall and burn it for about a week. The center of the husk is very whitish, and you will get very discolored ash.

- Q: The thread turns into that color, the yellow?
- A: It is dyed using gardenia.
- Q: *Mizubake* have quite a strong smell. What is that for?
- A: The smell is from the adhesive. It will go.

- A: 鹿の毛は滑りやすいです。ただ、灰もみをした後の毛は、それほど滑りません。このままの状態だと仕事がしづらいですけれど、灰もみをした後だと仕事がしやすいです。
- Q: 狸の毛のブラシは作りにくいですか。
- A: しごき刷毛ですね。少し柔らかいですが、それほど難しくありません。(S)

これは撫刷毛に使うもので、ツグ毛と言います。これは東南アジアに生息するクロツグ(Arenga)という2m以上になる背の高い植物の繊維です。そして、こちらがシュロです。これはヤシの木の一種で、木の皮の繊維です。これは猪の毛で根元の部分がヘアブラシの材料になります。イタチの毛は、お寿司屋さんがしょうゆを塗るときに使ったりしています。

刷毛板には檜の板を使います (Fig. 20)。三味線糸は 刷毛を綴じるときに使います (Fig. 21)。絹糸を撚って、お餅を鍋で煮てドロドロになったところに通してコーティングしています。熱をかけた毛は脂分が出てきますので、灰もみという作業で灰を使ってもんで脂分を取り除きます。この灰は、お米のもみ殻を燃やしたものです。お米のもみ殻を 170 から 180 cm くらい積み、火をつけて1週間ぐらいじわじわと煮出します。そうすると、もみの周りは真っ黒になってしまうのですけれども、真ん中から白い灰が取れます。

- Q: 糸の黄色い色は何に由来するのですか?
- A: クチナシです。
- Q: 水刷毛は匂いがするのですが、何の匂いですか。
- A: 接着剤が少し多いので匂うことがありますが、そ のうちなくなります。

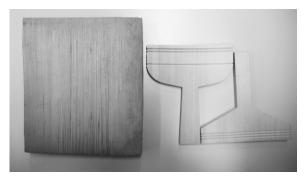


Fig.20 Cypress board for brush boards 刷毛板に用いる檜板



Fig.21 Silk thread for binding 綴じに用いる三味線糸

I would like to elaborate on the brushes. Brushes were first made in the Kansai area near Kyoto. In those days, the shoulders were rounded and they used soft hair. In the Edo period, brushes came to the Edo (Tokyo) area. Brush makers in Edo made the shoulder more triangular and they used firm hair. This trend still exists. In the Kansai area, people like to use rounded brushes, whereas people in Tokyo area prefer to use triangular ones.

Now, we would like to elaborate on *noribake*, the paste brush. This brush uses horse tail, but people in Kyoto use goat's tail for this brush. As I explained before, it undergoes a lot of different processes.

Kiritsugibake, mounting assembly brush, is also called tsukemawashibake in the Kansai area. It is thinner compared to noribake. It is used when applying paste to very fine areas.

Shigokibake, spreading brush, is fairly new brushes. It originated in Kyoto. We use it when we want to spread paste equally. Raccoon dog or a badger hair is used in its construction.

Mizubake, water brush, is used to apply moisture to the paper and to stretch it. Deer hair is mostly used. The hair of a deer is in a straw like state. When you immerse it in water, you get an equivalent amount of water on the paper.

Nadebake, smoothing brush, is used when we want to attach the lining paper and want to remove the air from the lining paper layer. Plant fibers are usually



Fig. 22 Various kind of brushes 1 様々な刷毛 1



Fig. 23 Various kind of brushes 2 様々な刷毛 2

それでは、刷毛の大方の説明をしていきたいと思います。もともと刷毛は京都、関西のほうでできました。そのころは、肩が丸みを帯びて、毛も柔らかい毛を使っていました。江戸時代になって刷毛が江戸に伝わってきたとき、江戸の職人さんが三角の形で、毛も腰の強い馬の毛を使うようになりました。その流れは、現在においても、関西では丸みを帯びた刷毛をより使い、関東では角張った刷毛を使っています。

糊刷毛には馬のしっぽの毛を使っています。先ほどの 製造工程でもあったように、いろいろな工程を踏んで作っています。京都の方は、山羊のしっぽの毛の糊刷毛を 主に使っていると思います。

切継刷毛は関西ではつけ回し刷毛とも言います。 糊刷 毛に比べて薄くできています。主に表具の切り継ぎといって、細い線のところに糊を付けるときに使っています。

しごき刷毛は京都で発明されて使い始められたまだ 新しい刷毛で、糊を均一にならすときに使う刷毛です。 used in their construction. The black one is formosa palm (*Arenga*), which is stiff. The brown one is hemp palm (*Trachycarpus fortunei*), which is softer. We also have a mixed one. There is more of a smoothing brush. This is goat hair. It is soft. It smoothens it out without leaving any scratches. The black and white one is called *goma-nadebake*. This is used for sliding doors. They are also used in order to remove the air.

Uchibake, beating brush, is used when we want to attach washi with washi. We beat paper with this brush to create adhesion when we use aged paste.

Dosabake is used to apply sizing liquid. We use it when we do the lining and do not want the ink to smear. These are the brushes used for Japanese paintings. The white one is made of goat hair and is used to apply color. Karabake provides complete glossing. For example, it can be used when we want to give an extra effect. Moose hair is used for this brush. Do you have any question about the brushes or about the process of making the brushes?



Fig. 24 Lecture 講義

- Q: With the *uchibake*, I understand from what we learned through the course that you have to turn it down to a slight angle. If somebody uses the brush incorrectly, can it be reshaped?
- A: The correct usage depends on the person who is teaching. Sometimes we use these slanted and sometimes to do it centered. There is no problem whether you use it slanted or centered.

こちらは狸の毛、または穴熊の毛を使っています。

水刷毛は、水を引いて和紙を伸ばすときに使う刷毛です。材料は主に鹿の毛を使っています。鹿毛の特徴は、 毛がストロー状になっているため、水をつけると一定の 割合で水がすうっと落ちていくことが特徴です。

撫刷毛は和紙を裏打ちなどの工程で密着させるときに、空気を取り除くために使います。主に植物の毛を使っておりまして、黒い毛がツグの毛で、特徴は毛が硬いことです。こちらの茶色い毛はシュロの毛で、少し柔らかい性質があります。これら二つをミックスした刷毛もあります。柔らかい白い山羊の毛で作った撫刷毛もあります。こちらは、傷を付けないようになでるときに使う刷毛になります。黒と白が混ざっているものはゴマ撫刷毛と言い、ふすまの下張りなど少し腰の強いものに使う刷毛です。これも空気を取り除くときに使います。

打刷毛は、裏打ちをするときに、和紙と和紙を密着させるときに使います。古糊と言う水みたいな糊を使用する際に、古糊は接着力が弱いので打刷毛でたたいて和紙と和紙を密着させるときに使う刷毛です。

本紙の裏打ちをする際に、墨のところがにじまないようにドーサ液を塗るときに使う刷毛がドーサ刷毛です。 日本画用の刷毛や水墨画用の刷毛もあります。白い山羊の毛のものは、色を付けるときに使う彩色刷毛です。空刷毛は墨絵で少しかすれた感じを出すときに使う刷毛で、鹿の一種のヘラジカの毛を使用しています。これがおおよその刷毛の説明ですが、質問はありますか。

- Q: 私たちはコースの中で、打刷毛を少し斜めにして使うようにと言われたのですけれども、斜めでなかったりして、間違って使ってしまった場合に修正は利くのですか。
- A: おそらくそれは、教えてくれる方によって違ってくると思いますが、斜めに打つ場合もありますし、垂直に打つ場合もあります。これは、斜めでも垂直でも、使い方としては問題ないです。ただ、打刷毛は、真ん中を少し高くつくってありますので、斜めに打つと両側がだんだん減ってきますので、直しをいただくこともよくあります。
- Q: 多くの人が長年使うので、中には間違った使い 方をしていることもあります。そうして形が悪

The middle part of the *uchibake* is slightly higher than when it is made. When you use it on a slant board, the ends will become worn.

- Q: A lot of people are going to use them for years, sometimes they are misused. Few of the brushes tend to line up and there are many brushes that have an awkward angle. I wanted to know if they can be reshaped.
- A: Yes, they can be.
- Q: Do you apply the urushi or place an order to somebody?
- A: Yes, we apply the urushi.
- Q: Does this big uchibake also use silk?
- A: Yes, we use a thicker *shamisen* string.

We use the string from the kind of *shamisen* that emits a lower tone than the normal one. (S)

- Q: How many brush makers are there in Japan?
- A: Maybe about five for mounting brushes. Around 50 years ago, there were hundreds of brush makers. Now, they are constantly reducing in number because Japanese houses are changing due to the spread of chair culture. Houses that still have *tatami* rooms and alcoves are decreasing, and hanging scrolls are no longer used as much.

Finally, we will talk about the maintenance of the brushes. For brushes that use paste, such as *noribake*, *kiritsugibake* and *shigokibake*, when you finish using them, wash them in flowing water and rinse them out with your hand. People often ask me whether we use detergent or not. It is better not to use detergent, because we do not know what is in the detergent. Using running water or warm water, rub the brushes well. Change the water many times. Use a dry towel to dry the hair (Fig. 25). Hang them in a very well-ventilated place away from the wall. It is better not to do it in a place where there is a lot of running water, so not around the sink. When you are not using them, store them in a ventilated place. If you use it today

くなった刷毛を直すことはできますか。

- A: それはできます。刷毛をきれいに揃えます。
- Q: 柄の部分の漆は田中さんところで塗っていらっ しゃるのですか。
- A: そうです。
- Q: 打刷毛の中にも三味線糸を使っていますか。
- A: 通常の三味線糸より太いものを使っています。 文楽などで使用する低い音を出す三味線の糸 です。(S)
- Q: 今、刷毛をつくっている方は日本に何人ぐらい いらっしゃるのですか。
- A: 表具用の刷毛ですと、5人ぐらいかと思います。 最盛期だった50年ほど前には、数百人くらいい たと思いますが、今は減ってしまいました。日本 の家屋から畳の部屋や床の間がなくなって掛軸 もかけることがなくなり、椅子の文化になって いったことが影響していると思います。

最後に、刷毛の手入れの仕方をご説明します。まず、 糊刷毛や切継刷毛、しごき刷毛など、糊を使う刷毛は使 い終わりましたら、流水かお湯でにつけ、手でごしごし とよく洗ってください。よく「洗剤を使いますか」と聞 かれることがありますが、皆さんのように文化財の修復 に使用される場合は、洗剤にはどんな成分が入っている か分からないので、あまり洗剤は使わないほうがいいで す。何度も何度も水を替えて洗ってください。洗いまし たら、よく水を落として、乾いたタオルでよく拭き取っ てください (Fig. 25)。その後、毛をならしてから、風 通しのいいところに壁から離れて陰干ししてください。 流しなど水回りのところに掛けている方がいらっしゃ いますが、あまり水気のないところが望ましいです。長 期間使わないときは、風通しのいいところで陰干しして ください。ただし、例えば今日使って明日も使うといっ たときは、洗った後に乾かさないで、きれいな水につけ ておきます。そして、翌朝また取り出して、軽く洗って から使ってください。それ以外のときは、必ず陰干しし てください。

and tomorrow as well, you can keep it immersed in clean water and then wash it very gently in the morning. Otherwise, always dry them off.

The *mizubake*'s deer hair is very fragile. Once it displays mold growth, the hair will come out. Of course, you need to wash them, but you also need to really wring them out to remove the water and then eliminate the moisture with a dry towel. Then, hang them away from the sun in a well-ventilated place. Always dry them. Do not leave them immersed in water.

For *nadebake*, you do not have to wash them too much. However, pieces of washi will stick when you use it. Then, immerse the hair in water and use an awl or something very pointed to comb out the washi (Fig. 26). Then, rinse it out well.



Fig. 26 Demonstration of maintenance of the brush 刷毛の手入れの実演

- Q: Is it better not to immerse the wooden part in water?
- A: Yes, it is better not to immerse the wooden part in water and only immerse the hair. Then, dry them out again. If it dries suddenly, the hair will spread out. To prevent that, some people use either a string or a paper string and tie the ends. You do not have to wash it every day.
- Q: How often do you maintain nadebake? (KATO)
- A: In my studio, we will wash them when the brush becomes very rough and to get out the washi fragments from it. So we are brushed or



Fig. 25 Demonstration of washing the brush 刷毛の洗い方の実演

水刷毛に使う鹿の毛は、とても弱いです。なので、カビが生えてしまうと、すぐ毛が抜けてしまいます。水刷毛は、洗った後は、必ず水気を切っていただいて、乾いたタオルでよく拭き取って、風通しのいいところに陰干してください。水刷毛は必ず干してください。水につけっぱなしには、絶対にしないでください。

撫刷毛は普段はあまり洗わなくても大丈夫です。ただ、使っていきますと、和紙が結構付いてきます。そうしたら、水をつけてもらって、キリや千枚通しなどでとかすようにすると和紙は取れてきます(Fig. 26)。その後、よくすすいでください。

- **Q**: 柄の部分は、あまり水につけないほうがいいので すか。
- A: つけないほうがいいです。その後、陰干しするのですが、その際、急に乾燥すると毛が開くので、和紙を撚って作った糸や紐で巻いている方が多いです。撫刷毛の掃除に関しては、汚れが目立ってきたらでいいです。毎日やるとアクが出てきますので、毎日やることはないです。
- Q: 実際、現場の人は、どれぐらいのペースで掃除しますか? (加藤)
- A: 和紙がからんで硬くなってしまってごわごわしてきたら行います。普段は軽くふいたりしています。(高瀬)
- Q: カナダだと、冬に状況が良くないと湿度が 10% ぐらいまで下がってしまうことがあるのですけれど、そういうところで刷毛を保存しておくにはどうしたらいいでしょうか。割れて、毛が抜け

dried off on a daily basis. (TAKASE)

- Q: In Canada, during the wintertime, if we do not control the environment, the humidity goes down to 10%. Does anyone have any suggestions for brush storage in such conditions? It will crack, and the hair comes out.
- A: In Japan too. Tokyo gets dry in the winter, with a humidity below 30%RH. We have used it in an environment like that, but it will crack if it dries too fast. It might be better not let them dry so fast. I have heard that people apply fermented persimmon juice or wrap them in washi or cloth in order to control the speed at the brush dries. (KATO)

I heard that some people put brushes in fridges. It is dry in fridges too, but it might not be below 10%RH.

In Japan, there are many people who want it to dry quickly, but I often hear such comments from people in Europe. You can wrap the wooden part with a moist towel to prevent it. (S)

- Q: Is your country dry?
- A: I am from Ireland. It is very stable most of the time because it always rains. (Participant)

New York is very dry in the winter and humid in the summer. (Participant)

When you use heating in the wintertime it especially gets very dry. (KATO)

- Q: If you want to moisten the places that are dry, could we put water underneath?
- A: The best thing would be to wrap the brushes in a moist towel. If we put a bucket of water underneath, it creates too much moisture. (S)

Too much humidity is not good because mold will grow easily. How about coating with fermented persimmon juice?

I know some people outside Japan apply fermented persimmon juice to coat brushes. (KATO) てしまったりします。

A: まず一応言っておくと、日本でも特に東京では 冬は乾くので、湿度が 30%RH 以下になること もあります。そんな環境でも使ってきたので、い きなり駄目になることはないとは思うのです が、速く乾燥してしまうと、割れてしまう可能性 があります。そういうときは、乾かすことを遅ら せるような何かを考える。海外の例として、柿渋 を塗ったとか、あるいは、布とか和紙で巻いて乾 くスピードをコントロールしているようなのを 聞いたことがあります。(加藤)

冷蔵庫の中に入れている方もいると聞いたことがあります。冷蔵庫内も乾燥していますが、 10%RHということはないと思うので。

日本では早く乾いてほしいということの方が 多いですが、ヨーロッパの方からはそのような 話をよく聞きますね。対策としては、板の部分だ け湿らせたタオルで巻いておくとよいと思いま す。(S)

- **Q**: 自分の国は乾燥するという方はどれくらいいらっしゃいますか?
- A: アイルランドは、どちらかというと安定していて、いつも雨が降っています。(研修生)

ニューヨークは、非常に両極端で、冬は乾燥して、夏は湿気があります。(研修生)

特に最近は、冬場に暖房を入れると、ものすご く乾燥してしまいますね。(加藤)

- Q: 例えば、下にバケツに水を入れて、保存する場所 の下から水分を与えるようなかたちにしたら、ど うですか。
- A: それは、急に湿り気が入ってしまいます。先ほど言ったように、よく絞った布を板に巻いてもらう方が良いと思います。(S)

難しいですね、あまり湿り気を与えすぎてもカビが生えてしまいますし。柿渋とかを塗ったらどうですか。

柿渋塗っている方は、たまに海外でいますよ ね。(加藤)

防虫、防カビになるので、日本でも柿渋を塗っ ている方はいらっしゃいます。使う頻度にもよる Coating with fermented persimmon juice, which some people do in Japan too with antifungal and anti-insect. If you are using the brushes every day, it is not so much of a problem.

Lastly, I would like to ask you something. You know sometimes we can get inexpensive brushes abroad. Have you used those inexpensive brushes? How was it? (KATO)

They do not last. (Participant)

Some people say that Japanese brushes are expensive, but they last. So, in the long run, they are not expensive. (KATO)

と思いますが、毎日使っている分にはいいのです けれど、使わないと痛みます。

最後になりますが、皆さんにお伺いしたいことがあります。海外で安い刷毛を売っていることがあるのですが、そういうものを使ったことはありますか。どうでしたか。

長持ちしないです。(研修生)

そうなのです。日本の刷毛は高いとおっしゃる方はいるのですけれども、長持ちするので、長い目で見たら決して高いものではないということを最後に付け加えておきます。ありがとうございました。(加藤)

		Practical	Work

1 Schedule 実習日程

Date	Time	Subjects	Lecturer	
Tue. 10 th Sep.	13:00–15:00	1. Preparing paste 糊炊き		
	15:15–17:15	2. Cleaning クリーニング		
Wed. 11 th Sep.	13:00–15:00	3. Infilling 補紙		
	15:15–17:15	4. Trimming the infill paper 補紙削り		
Thur. 12 th Sep.	09:30–12:00	5. Applying the first lining 肌裏打ち		
	13:00–15:00	6. Preparation of the second lining 増裏打ち(準備)		
	15:15–17:15	7. Applying the second lining 増裏打ち		
Fri. 13 th Sep.	09:30–12:00	8. Orefuse 折れ伏せ	TAKASE Atsuko, OGASWARA Atsushi 高瀬 亜津子、小笠原 温	
	13:00–15:00	9. Applying the final lining 総裏打ち		
Mon. 23 rd Sep.	09:30–12:00	10. Joining the <i>honshi</i> and the tail border paper 本紙と巻末紙の継ぎ		
	13:00–15:00	11. Making the cover 表紙作製		
	15:15–17:15	12. Preparing the roller rod 軸すげ		
Tue.	13:00–15:00	13. Trimming off the top and bottom of the <i>honshi</i> 本紙裁ち		
24 th Sep.	15:15–17:15	14. Attaching the roller rod to the tail border paper 軸付け		
Wed. 25 th Sep.	09:30–12:00	15. Attaching the wrapping cord to the cover 表紙紐付け 16. Joining the cover and the <i>honshi</i> 本紙と表紙の継ぎ		
	13:00–17:15	Handling of hanging scrolls and folding screens 掛軸と屏風の取り扱い	IKEDA Kazuhiko 池田 和彦	
Thur. 26 th Sep.	13:00–15:00	17. Finishing 仕上げ 18. Storing 収納	TAKASE Atsuko, OGASWARA Atsushi -高瀬 亜津子、小笠原 温	
	15:15–17:15	19. Book binding 冊子綴じ	[→] 高瀬 亜津子、小笠原 温 	

2 Processes

工程

The Association for Conservation of National Treasures
TAKASE Atsuko, OGASAWARA Atsushi

2.1 Preparing paste

■ Making wheat starch paste

The paste used in paper conservation is made by heating a mixture of wheat starch and water. Two kinds of wheat starch are available for purchase: wet wheat starch and dry wheat starch. The former is in a wet state, whereas the latter is a dry powder. In this course, we use wet wheat starch. The volume ratio of the wet wheat starch to water is 1: 3-3.5. This time, 1500 ml of water was added to 500 ml of the wet wheat starch. This mixture will be heated for about an hour on the gas stove. The important thing is to keep the temperature and heat high and to stir it well while heating it.

- 1. Put wheat starch and water into a thick pan.
- 2. Mix wheat starch and water well to ensure that there are no lumps of wheat starch.
- 3. Start stirring at a high temperature. Make sure that no part of the mixture remains uncooked or gets scorched (Fig. 2).
- 4. Stop heating the paste when it appears glossy and becomes so smooth that the paste becomes entangled with the stick.
- Pour the paste into a container and let it cool down.
- Q: How many days should the starch be immersed for?
- A: In a place where the room temperature is kept at 20 °C, such as a conservation studio, it would last one month or longer if you change the water.

国宝修理装潢師連盟

高瀬 亜津子、小笠原 温

2.1 糊炊き

■ 沈糊炊き

修復に使用する糊は、小麦澱粉に水を加え加熱して作ります。小麦澱粉は、湿った状態の生沈と乾いた状態の乾燥沈の2種類が販売されています。本研修では生沈を使用します。分量は、ビーカーに入れた状態(容積比)で生沈が1、水が3~3.5です。今回は生沈500mlに水1500mlで行います。ガスコンロで約1時間加熱しますが、大切なことは強火で高い温度を保った状態でよく攪拌しながら長時間炊くということです。

- 1. 小麦澱粉と水を厚手の鍋に入れる。
- 2. 加熱を始める前に、小麦澱粉の塊が残らないように よく混ぜ合わせる。
- 3. 高温で加熱し始め、加熱斑や焦げができないように 手早く棒などで撹拌し続ける (Fig. 2)。
- 4. 表面に艶が出て透明になり、粘りが出て棒にからまるようになったら火を止める。
- 5. 糊を鍋から容器に移し、冷やす。



Fig. 1 Lecture 講義

- Q: Why do you start cooking with wet wheat starch rather than dry starch?
- A: Originally, wheat starch is produced in a wet state. However, it is not suitable for transport because wet wheat starch is heavy and can easily rot. Thus, wet wheat starch is dried and made into powder in the industrial process. Nowadays, dry wheat starch is more readily available, while wet starch is difficult to obtain. Since wet wheat starch is still obtainable in Kyoto, wet starch is used at conservation studios in Kyoto, but some conservation studios in other areas use dry wheat starch as it is not easy to obtain wet starch in those areas. At one of the conservation studios using dry wheat starch, the dry starch is soaked in water for about three months to half a year. It is not an overnight or month-long process. (KATO)
- Q: What should be the ratio of the water to dry wheat starch when immersing?
- A: When immersing dry wheat starch in water, the amount of water is irrelevant if the starch powder is sufficiently covered with water.
- Q: Do you recommend that Western conservation studios should start cooking the paste from the starch that has been immersed in water sufficiently rather than cooking from the dry powder of starch?
- A: I heard from a conservator who uses dry wheat starch that it is necessary to keep the starch immersed for at least three months or half a year, if possible, in order to make good quality paste. (KATO)
- Q: Is the water purified?
- A: Yes. It is purified water.
- Q: Would you ever use a double boiler to prevent burning or causing a fire?
- A: No. As it should be heated with high heat and at a high temperature, we do not make the paste with a double boiler.



Fig. 2 Cooking wheat starch paste 糊炊き

- Q: 澱粉は水に何日ほどつけておくのですか?
- A: 室温が 20℃程に保たれている工房のような場所 であれば、水をきちんとこまめに取り換えていれ ば1か月かそれ以上持ちます。
- Q: 乾燥沈ではなく生沈から炊くのはなぜですか?
- A: 元々、澱粉を作る過程では濡れた状態で出来上がります。しかし、濡れたままの状態では腐りやすく、重いなど輸送に適さないため、工業的に販売する過程で乾かしたものが作られるようになりました。現在では、乾燥した状態のものが多く、濡れた状態のものは手に入りにくくなってきました。京都ではまだ濡れた状態のものが手に入るため、京都の工房では濡れた状態の生沈を使用していますが、そのほかの地域では入手困難なため乾燥沈を使用する工房もあるということです。乾燥沈を使用しているある工房では、乾燥沈を一晩や1か月ではなく3か月から半年ほど水につけておくそうです(加藤)。
- **Q:** 水につけておくときの水の分量はどのくらいですか?
- A: 水につけておくときは、粉が十分に水につかって いれば水の量は気にしません。
- Q: 西洋の工房でも乾燥した状態から炊き始めるより、十分に水につけた状態のものを使用すること を推奨しますか?
- A: 乾燥沈を使用している工房の方から聞いた話に よると、やはり最低でも3か月、できれば半年は 水につけた状態のものでないと良い糊が炊けな いと言っていました(加藤)。

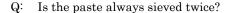
Prior to using the wheat starch paste, the paste should be strained using a sieve that has a horsehair net and a rice paddle. After sieving the paste about twice, the paste is kneaded with a brush to make it stickier (Fig. 3, Fig. 4). When the paste turns shiny and becomes sticky, the water is added little by little so as to dilute it to the required concentration.

- Q: つけておくときや炊く時の水は、浄水ですか?
- A: はい、すべて浄水です。
- Q: 火傷や火事を防ぐために湯煎を使うことはありますか?
- A: いいえ、強火で高い温度で加熱したいので湯煎は しません。

糊を使用する前に、馬の毛の網目を持った水嚢と杓文字を用いて糊を漉します(Fig. 3、Fig. 4)。2回ほど漉した後、刷毛で糊を練り、粘りを出します。糊に粘りや照りが出てから、少しずつ水を入れて、必要な濃度に糊を希釈します。



Fig. 3 Explanation of the preparation of paste 糊の準備についての説明



- A: At the studio where I work, we sieve it twice when applying it to *honshi* (main artwork).
- Q: You have said that the tools are wet with water before using them. How long are they immersed?
- A: It would be fine if the entire surface of the tool is wet with water once, rather than soaking it.

 Particularly, sieves may become worn if they are kept wet for long, thus they need to be cleaned and dried immediately after use.



Fig. 4 Practical work 実習

- Q: 糊は必ず2回濾すのですか?
- A: 本紙に使用する場合は、私の所属する工房では2 回濾しています。
- **Q**: 使う前に、道具を水で濡らしておくとのことですが、どのくらいの時間つけておくのですか?
- A: つけておくというより、一度全面が水で濡れれば よいという程度です。特に水嚢は長時間濡れた状態が続くと傷むため、使用後はすぐに洗って乾か す必要があります。

■ Making funori extraction

Two extraction methods will be introduced. One is the extraction at room temperature and the other is the extraction with heating. *Mafunori* is used here. When one part of *funori* is dissolved into 40 parts of water by weight, the concentration of the solution will be 2-2.5%. It can be diluted further depending on the purpose for its use. In the conservation, *funori* extracted at room temperature is mainly used. Regardless of how it is extracted, the *funori* solution goes bad easily, so it is put in a sealed container and stored in a cool place, such as a refrigerator.

Extraction at room temperature

- Cut seaweed into small pieces.
- 2. Wash away salt and dirt with running water.
- 3. Soak in water overnight to make sure that it absorbs water well.
- 4. Put it into a cloth, such as gauze, and squeeze it.
- Strain it three times while changing cloth to a finer one each time.

Extraction with heating

- 1. Cut seaweed into small pieces.
- 2. Wash away salt and dirt with running water.
- 3. Put seaweed and water into a container, such as a beaker, and cook with a double boiler (Fig. 6).
- 4. Stop heating when it reaches the required concentration.
- 5. Put it into a gauze like cloth while it is still hot and strain it three times while changing the cloth to a finer one each time (Fig. 7).
- Q: (looking at the *funori* being strained) Why don't you squeeze it?
- A: Firstly, it is too hot. Secondly, it is to avoid squeezing out unnecessary bits into the solution such as the ramps of the *funori*.
- Q: How many days we can keep the *funori* solution for?

■ 布海苔炊き

今回は乾燥させたマフノリを使用して、室温と加熱して抽出する方法を紹介します。重量比で布海苔1に対して水が40倍で、2~2.5%の布海苔抽出液になります。これを場合に応じてさらに薄めて使用します。実際の修復の作業では、室温で抽出した布海苔を主に使用します。どちらの方法で抽出した場合でも、布海苔は悪くなりやすいため、蓋つきの容器に入れて冷蔵庫など冷たいところで保管します。

室温抽出

- 1. 必要な分量を小さくカットする。
- 2. 流水で塩分や塵を手早く洗い流す。
- 3. 一晩水につけて、十分に水を含ませる。
- 4. 布海苔をガーゼなどの布に入れ絞る。
- 5. より細かい目の布に取り換え3回ほど濾す。

加熱抽出

- 1. 必要な分量を小さくカットする。
- 2. 流水で塩分や塵を手早く洗い流す。
- 3. 容器に水と布海苔を入れ湯煎にかける (Fig. 6)。
- 4. 必要な糊の濃度に応じて火を止める。(ただし、全 て溶けきるまで加熱すると接着部分以外の成分が 出るので、溶けきる前には加熱を止める)
- 5. 熱いうちに布海苔をガーゼなどの布に入れ、目を細かいものに取り換えながら3回ほど濾す(Fig. 7)。
 - Q: (濾す作業を見ながら) ぎゅっと絞らないのはな ぜですか?
- A: まず熱いというのと、布海苔の塊など余分なもの も絞り出してしまうことを防ぐためです。
- Q: 布海苔抽出液は何日ほど保存できますか?
- A: 基本的には、その日に使い切らない分は冷凍庫に 入れて凍らせます。冷凍した場合は1年ほど保存 することもあります。
- Q: 布海苔抽出液をマイラーシートに薄く塗ってシー ト化して保存することはありますか?
- A: そのような方法をとっている工房もあると聞きま すが、私の所属する工房では行っていません。

- A: Basically, the *funori* solution that cannot be used up in the day is frozen in a freezer. In some cases, it is kept in the freezer for about one year.
- Q: Do you turn the solution into a sheet by applying it thinly to a Mylar® sheet in order to store it?
- A: I have heard that some studios employ that method, but in my studio, we don't.



Fig. 5 Lecture 講義



Fig. 6 Extraction of *funori* with heating フノリの加熱抽出



Fig. 7 Straining *funori* with gauze ガーゼでフノリを濾す

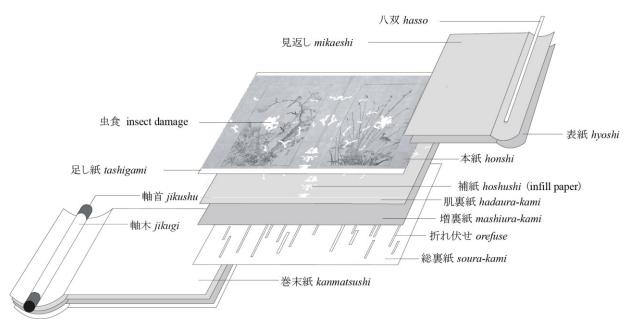


Fig.8 Structure of a handscroll 巻子の構造

Table 1 $\,$ Terms relating structure of a handscroll

巻子の構造に関する用語

を子の構造に関 Terms	Pronaunciation in Japanese	
八双	hasso	head rod
見返し	mikaeshi	inside cover
表紙	hyoshi	cover
本紙	honshi	artwork
補紙/ 補修紙	hoshi/ hoshushi	infill paper
肌裏紙	hadaura-kami	the first lining paper
増裏紙	mashiura-kami	subsidiary lining paper (the second lining)
折れ伏せ	orefuse	reinforcement paper strip
総裏紙	soura-kami	the final lining paper (the third lining)
虫食	mushikui	insect damage
足し紙	tashigami	margin paper
軸首	jikushu	roller knob
軸木	jikugi	roller rod
巻末紙	kanmatsushi	tail border paper

2.2 Cleaning

Firstly, dust is removed using a soft hair brush. In conservation work, there are many processes that utilize water, such as wet cleaning and lining. Therefore, before using water for the first time, the condition of the *honshi*, Chinese ink, and pigments should be checked to ensure that they are durable enough for water to be used on them. If the Chinese ink or pigments bleed due to water, they will be consolidated.

The aim of cleaning with water is not to remove the dirt completely. It is intended to remove the dirt to some degree so as to prevent the dirt from moving to other areas or spreading during the work that is conducted afterwards.

- Place a sheet of yojoshi (A) (polyester paper) on the working table and place the honshi face down on the yojoshi (A).
- Straighten the *honshi* with *shirobake* by spraying moisture (Fig. 9, Fig. 10).
- 3. Place a sheet of *yojoshi* (B) (rayon paper) on the *honshi*. Flip over the *yojoshi* (A), the *honshi*, and the *yojoshi* (B) together so that the *honshi* is face up. Place the *honshi* on the blotting paper and remove the *yojoshi* (A) (Fig. 11).
- Spray ion-exchanged water so as not to overmoisten the honshi.
- Exchange the *yojoshi* (rayon paper to Sanmoa® paper) and dry the *honshi* between a sheet of new *yojoshi* (Sanmoa® paper) and felt with press (Fig. 12).
- Q: Do you apply infills when the *honshi* is wet?
- A: Yes. In some cases, infilling might be done when the *honshi* is wet.

2.2 クリーニング

まず、やわらかい刷毛でほこりや細かい塵などを取り除きます。クリーニングや裏打ちなど、水を用いた工程が多くあるため、最初に水を使用する前には本紙と墨や顔料が水に耐えられる状態か確認します。墨や顔料が水でにじんでしまう場合は、剥落止めを行います。

水を用いたクリーニングは汚れを取りきることが目 的ではなく、のちの作業中に汚れがほかのところへ移っ たり広がったりしない程度に汚れを取ることを目的と しています。

- 1. 作業台の上に養生紙 A (ポリエステル紙)を置き、 その上に本紙を伏せて置く。
- 本紙にスプレーで湿りを入れて白刷毛で伸ばす (Fig. 9、Fig. 10)。
- 本紙の上に養生紙 B (レーヨン紙)を被せ、養生紙 AB と共に返し、本紙を表が上になるように吸い取り紙の上におき、養生紙 A を取り外す (Fig. 11)。
- 4. スプレーを用いてイオン交換水で本紙に負担のか からない範囲でクリーニングをする。
- 5. 養生紙をレーヨン紙からサンモアに取り替え、本紙を養生紙、フェルト、吸い取り紙に挟んでプレス乾燥する (Fig. 12)。
- Q: 本紙が濡れている状態で補修をすることはありますか?
- A: はい、本紙が濡れている状態で補修を行うことも あります。



Fig. 9 Moisten the *honshi* with spray スプレーを用いて本紙を湿らせる



Fig. 10 Straighten the honshi with a brsuh 本紙を刷毛で伸ばす



Fig. 11 Place the honshi on the blotting paper 本紙を吸い取り紙の上に置く



Fig. 12 Dry the *honshi* with press 本紙をプレス乾燥する



Fig. 13 Practical work 実習



Fig. 14 Practical work 実習



Fig. 15 Practical work 実習

2.3 Infilling

To maintain visual and physical homogeneity, the areas of loss in the *honshi* are filled with infill paper. The same paper as the *honshi* will be chosen for infilling in terms of raw materials, texture, and processing. When infilling, the recto and verso and the fiber direction of the infill paper are matched to those of the *honshi*.

- Place a sheet of yojoshi (polyester paper) on the working table and place the honshi face down on the yojoshi
- Put infill paper over a lost area on the *honshi* and trace its shape. Tear the infill paper along the traced shape.
- 3. Cover the lost area with the infill paper by overlapping about 1 *bu* width using the mixture of the paste and *funori*. (Fig. 16, Fig. 17).
- Place a sheet of *yojoshi* (polyester paper) and blotting paper over the infilled area of the *honshi* and press down on it.
- Exchange the blotting paper a few times and continue to dry by pressing.



Fig. 17 Put infill paper over a lost area 補修紙を欠損部に貼る

2.3 補紙

視覚的、物理的な均質性を保つため、本紙の欠損部を 補修紙で補塡します。補修紙は、素材、構造、加工など について本紙と同じものを選び、裏表と繊維方向を本紙 に合わせて補塡します。

- 1. 作業台の上に養生紙 (ポリエステル紙) を置き、その上に本紙を伏せて置く。
- 2. 補修紙を本紙欠損部の形にトレースし準備する。
- 補修紙を欠損部に新糊と布海苔の混合糊を用いて 1 分幅位の糊代で貼る (Fig. 16、Fig. 17)。
- 4. 補修をした部分にポリエステル紙と吸取り紙を置きプレスをする。
- 5. 何度か吸取り紙を交換し、引き続きプレス乾燥を行う。

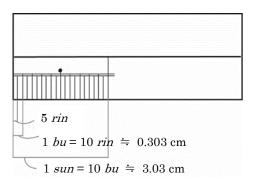


Fig. 16 Japanese units of length 日本の長さの単位(尺寸法)



Fig. 18 Practical work 実習

2.4 Trimming the infill paper

Scrape off the overlapping edges of the infill paper that has been applied to the missing area from inside to outside. Scrape off in order to make the border between the *honshi* and the infill paper as flat as possible, but make sure not to scrape off the newly applied infill itself as it may cause the infill to separate.

- 1. Remove the weight from the honshi.
- Use an *into* knife to thin out the parts of infill paper that overlap with the *honshi* (Fig. 19, Fig. 20).
- Check the *honshi* to enure that the infill paper has been thinned out sufficiently and evenly.

2.4 補紙削り

欠損部にあてた補修紙の余分を内側から外側に向けて斜めに削り取ります。できる限りフラットに仕上げるためですが、削りすぎて欠損部から外れてもいけません。

- 1. 本紙のプレスをはずす。
- 2. 本紙裏面を確認し、補修紙の重なりが多い部分を印 刀で削りならす (Fig. 19、Fig. 20)。
- 3. 削った後の点検をする。

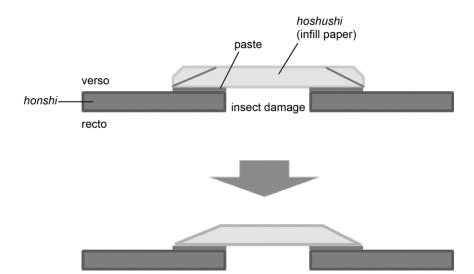


Fig. 19 Section views of a paper infill 補紙の断面



Fig. 20 Scrape off the edges of the infill paper 印刀で補修紙の端を削る



Fig. 21 Practical work 実習

2.5 Applying the first lining

The first lining paper, which is thin tough *kozo* paper, supports the *honshi* and helps it retain its shape. Prior to applying the first lining, margin paper is attached to the top and bottom of the *honshi*. When finishing this up as a handscroll at the end, cutting the attached margin paper straight provides the uniformity of the height. The margin paper can also protect the top and bottom edge of the *honshi*, which can easily become worn. One edge of the margin paper is straight cut and the other edge is feathered edge. The feathered edge is made by drawing a line on the paper with water and pulling the paper apart along the line so that the paper fibers come out. This technique is called *kuisaki*. The width of the paper is 5 *bu*.

The paste is diluted before use. As the paste for the margin paper needs to be applied in a narrow line, the paste should be thick to some extent. The thinly diluted paste is used for the lining because the first lining paper is extremely thin.

In this course, the lining is applied three times in total: the first lining, the second lining, and the final lining. For the first lining and the second lining, the paste is applied onto the recto of the lining paper, which is smooth. However, for the final lining, the paste is applied onto the verso, which is rough, so that the smooth side comes outside when it is rolled.

- 1. Prepare the first lining paper (Fig. 22).
- Place a sheet of yojoshi (polyester paper) on the working table and place the honshi face down on the yojoshi.
- Straighten the honshi with a shirobake by spraying moisture.
- Attach pieces of margin paper to the top and bottom of the *honshi* with paste using a kiritsugibake (mounting assembly brush) (Fig. 23).

2.5 肌裏打ち

肌裏打ちは薄く強度のある楮紙で本紙を支え、形状を維持できる状態にします。肌裏打ちをする前に本紙の上下に紙(天地足し紙)を足します。これは最終的に巻子に仕上げる際に、この天地足し紙部分をまっすぐに裁つことで高さを揃え、傷みやすい上下を保護するために付けます。片方は包丁でまっすぐ裁ち、もう片方は水で線をつけて引きちぎることで紙の毛羽を出す喰い裂きという技法を用いて紙の端を裂いたものを、今回は5分幅で準備します。

糊は薄めた新糊を使用します。天地足し紙には細く糊をつけるためにある程度濃い糊を、裏打ちには肌裏打紙が非常に薄いため薄く希釈した糊を使用します。

今回は全部で3回(肌裏、増裏、総裏)裏打ちをします。肌裏打ちと増裏打ちはつるつるした紙の表面に糊をつけますが、巻いたときに滑らかな面を外側に出すため、最後の総裏打ちではざらざらした紙の裏面に糊をつけます。

- 1. 肌裏紙の準備を行う (Fig. 22)。
- 養生紙(ポリエステル紙)を作業台の上に置き、その上に本紙を伏せて置く。
- 3. スプレーで本紙に湿りを入れ、白刷毛で伸ばす。
- 4. 本紙裏面の天地に切り継ぎ刷毛で糊を付け、天地足し紙を付ける (Fig. 23)。
- 5. 作業台に肌裏紙を置き、糊刷毛で全面に糊をつける (Fig. 24)。
- 糊をつけた肌裏紙をひっかけ棒で持ち上げ、本紙の上に置き、撫刷毛でよく撫で、裏打ちをする(Fig. 25、Fig. 26)。
- 7. 裏打ちが済んだ本紙を養生紙ごと毛布の上に移動 し、本紙の表面を上にして置く。
- 8. 本紙表面の養生紙を取り外し、本紙をそのまま毛布上で乾燥させる。
- 9. 同様に巻末紙の肌裏打ちを行い、毛布上で乾燥させる。

- 5. Place the first lining paper on the working table.
 Then apply paste to the lining paper using a noribake (paste brush) (Fig. 24).
- Lift the first lining paper by using a hikkake stick.
 Place the first lining paper on the honshi and smooth the surface using a nadebake (smoothing brush) (Fig. 25, Fig. 26).
- 7. Move the lined *honshi* together with the *yojoshi* and place the *honshi* face up on a blanket.
- 8. Remove the *yojoshi* from the *honshi*. Dry the *honshi* on the blanket.
- Apply the first lining paper to the tail border paper in the same way. Dry them on the blanket.



Fig. 22 Prepare the first lining paper 肌裏紙を準備する



Fig. 23 Attach pieces of margin paper 天地足し紙を付ける



Fig. 24 Apply paste to the lining paper 裏打ち紙に糊を付ける



Fig. 25 Lift the first lining paper by using a hikkake stick 糊をつけた肌裏紙をひっかけ棒で持ち上げる



Fig. 26 Place the first lining paper on the honshi 本紙の上に置き刷毛でよく撫でる

2.6 Prepation of the second lining

The paper used for the second lining is *misugami*. Gofun, calcium carbonate, is added as a filler, which makes it soft. The entire strength of the mount is adjusted by using *misugami* of different thickness depending on the strength of each part. Since *misugami* is made smaller in size, several pieces of *misugami*, whose edges are feathered, are joined when using it (Fig. 27).

- 1. Mark the second lining paper with an awl.
- 2. Use a ruler and the moistened tip of a spatula to moisten the paper along this line.
- 3. Tear apart the second lining paper along this moistened line (*kuisaki*).

2.6 増裏打ち(準備)

増裏打ちに使用する紙は美栖紙です。胡粉を添加して 柔らかく漉いており、表具の各部分の強さによって厚み を変え、全体の強度を整えるのに使います。美栖紙はサ イズが小さいため、喰い裂き技法を用いて紙の端を裂い たものを複数枚継いで使用します (Fig. 27)。

- 1. 増裏紙の端と端を合わせて直角を出し、星突きで印をつける。
- 2. 印に合わせて定規を置き、ヘラと湿りで定規に沿って筋をつける。
- 3. 増裏紙の片側を定規で押さえ反対側を引っ張り、湿りでつけた筋で紙を喰い裂きにする。

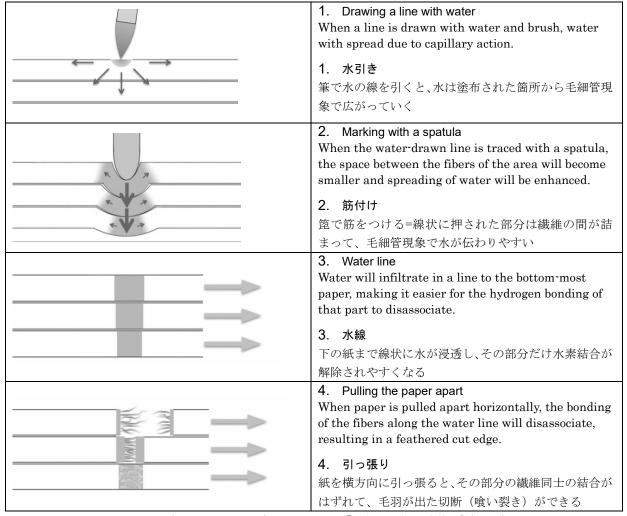


Fig. 27 How to make *kuisaki* (feathered cut edge). Adapted from 『装潢文化財の保存修理』 (p. 139), by The Association for Conservation of National Treasures (ACNT) (ed.), 2015, ACNT. (in Japanese) 喰い裂きの作り方 (国宝修理装潢師連盟編集、『装潢文化財の保存修理』、国宝修理装潢師連盟、2015、139 頁より引用)

2.7 Applying the second lining

Aged paste is used for the second lining. In order to make the particle finer, the aged paste is taken out from the pot, its water is drained for a day, and it is strained once using a sieve. The strained paste is then kneaded in a mortar using a pestle. When the paste become sticky, the water is added gradually.

Misugami is applied as its fiber direction is perpendicular to the fiber direction of the honshi, and the feathered edges of the two pieces of misugami should slightly overlap each other. This application helps to create balance between the honshi and the first lining paper and makes it durable for rolling. When applying the second lining and the final lining, uchibake (beating brush) is used. Since the adhesive strength of aged paste is weak, the application of uchibake makes the paper fibers lightly tangled and provides better adhesion. The application of *uchibake* will start from the upper right corner and proceed toward the bottom left corner. Then, I hold the brush in my other hand and proceed back toward the starting point in the same way. Two rounds will be operated this time. The beating strength should be adjusted corresponding to the condition and thickness of the *honshi* and the thickness of the lining paper. It should be done carefully so as to not to beat the thin paper too strongly, which would make holes in it.

- Place a sheet of yojoshi (polyester paper) on the working table and place the honshi face down on the yojoshi.
- Straighten the honshi with a nadebake by spraying moisture.
- Place half of the second lining paper on the working table and apply paste on the second lining paper with a noribake.
- Lift the second lining paper by using a hikkake stick. Place it on the honshi and smoothen the surface with a nadebake.

2.7 増裏打ち (裏打ち)

増裏打ちには古糊を使用します。粒子を細かくするため、甕から出して1日水を切り、水嚢で一度濾したものを乳鉢で擦ります。粘りが出てきたら少しずつ水を加えていきます。

本紙と肌裏紙とのバランスをとり、巻いたときに強くするために、美栖紙は本紙と繊維の方向が直角になる向きで、喰い裂いた部分が軽く合わさるように重ねます。 増裏打ちと総裏打ちでは打刷毛を行います。古糊は接着力が弱いため、繊維を少し絡めてくっつきをよくする目的があります。1枚目の上から打ち始め、2枚目の下まで打ち終えたら手を持ち替えて逆向きに引き続き打っていきます。今回は2往復分打ちます。打つ強さは本紙の状態と厚さ、裏打ち紙の厚さによって調整しますが、薄い紙を強く打つと穴があいてしまうこともあるので注意が必要です。

- 1. 養生紙(ポリエステル紙)を作業台の上に置き、その上に本紙を伏せて置く。
- 2. 本紙にスプレーで湿りを入れ、撫刷毛で伸ばす。
- 3. 作業台に1枚目の増裏紙を置き、糊刷毛で全面に糊 をつける。
- 4. 糊をつけた増裏紙をひっかけ棒で持ち上げ、本紙の上に置き、撫刷毛で撫でる。
- 5. 作業台に2枚目の増裏紙を置き、全面に糊をつける。
- 6. 糊をつけた増裏紙をひっかけ棒で持ち上げ、本紙の上に喰い裂き部分を合わせて置き、撫刷毛で撫でる (Fig. 28、Fig. 29)。
- 7. 打刷毛で打つ (Fig. 30)。
- 8. 撫刷毛でよく撫でる。
- 9. 裏打ちが済んだ本紙を養生紙ごと毛布の上に移動し、本紙の表面を上にして置く。
- 10. 本紙表面の養生紙を取り外し、本紙をそのまま毛布上で乾燥させる。
- 11. 同様に巻末紙の増裏打ちを行い、毛布上で乾燥させる (Fig. 31)。

- Place the other half of the second lining paper on the working table and apply paste on the second lining paper.
- 6. Lift the second lining paper by using a *hikkake* stick. Place the second lining paper to join the feathered cut edge on the *honshi* and smoothen the surface (Fig. 28, Fig. 29).
- 7. Beat the *honshi* with an *uchibake* (Fig. 30).
- 8. Smoothen the surface with a nadebake.
- 9. Move the lined *honshi* together with *yojoshi* and place the *honshi* face up on a blanket.
- 10. Remove the *yojoshi* from the *honshi*. Dry the *honshi* on a blanket.
- 11. Apply the second lining paper to the tail border paper in the same way. Dry them on a blanket (Fig. 31).



Fig. 28 Place the second lining paper to join the feathered cut edge on the *honshi* 喰い裂き部分を合わせて増裏紙を本紙に置く

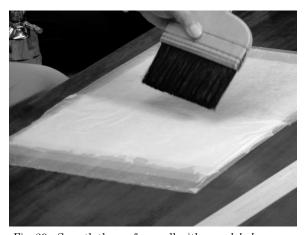


Fig. 29 Smooth the surface well with a *nadebake* 撫で刷毛で表面をよく撫でる



Fig. 30 Beat the *honshi* with an *uchibake* 打刷毛で打つ

- Q: How much of the paste do you make for the aged paste every year?
- A: In my studio, they make about 10 huge pots every year. One pot contains 18 litter of paste.
- Q: Is there an expiration date?
- A: Aged paste that is 20 years or older may not be



Fig. 31 Dry the *honshi* on the blanket 毛布上で乾燥させる

- Q: 古糊は毎年どのくらいの量を作るのですか?
- A: 私の工房では、毎年甕 (18ℓ) に 10 個分 ほど作ります。
- Q: 古糊の使用期限はありますか?
- A: 作製してから20年までは残っていないことが多いですが、16~7年のものは使用しています。

left in our stock, but we use the 16-or 17-yearold aged paste when they are left.

2.8 Orefuse (applying paper strips)

To reinforce the areas that are creased or torn, the narrow paper strips, called *orefuse*, are pasted. This process is not necessary if the *honshi* is stored flat. This is required for the mounted artworks that are stored by being rolled up, such as handscrolls and hanging scrolls. The repeated rolling and opening of these artworks causes them to crease. If such creases are left untreated and the artwork continues to be repeatedly rolled and unrolled for display, the highest point of the creases will gradually become worn, and the Chinese ink and pigments at that spot will come off. If the condition of the creases worsens, they will tear. Even worse, this will result paper being lost and the number of creases will increase from there.

The creases will likely occur in the areas where there are differences in the thickness of the *honshi*, there are tears, or where the old infills applied to the creases and tears are inappropriate—such as in terms of the thickness of paper and size of the infills. Furthermore, creases might also be caused in cases where the lining paper is too thin or deteriorated, the applied paste is not smooth, or the lining paper is lifted due to the failure of the paste. Even if these areas are reinforced with *orefuse*, new creases can appear due to inappropriate handling afterwards.

Minogami is used for orefuse because its fiber is strong. The point is to apply thin narrow paper strips to only the areas that are weak. In order to take advantage of the strength of the fiber, the fiber direction of the orefuse should be perpendicular to those of the honshi.

- Prepare orefuse by cutting kozo paper into thin strips (Fig. 33).
- 2. Place a sheet of yojoshi (polyester paper) on the

2.8 折れ伏せ

折れや裂けを補強するために、折れ伏せと呼ばれる細い紙帯を貼ります。本紙を平らな状態で保管する場合には必要のない作業で、巻子や掛軸のように仕立てて巻いて保管する作品の場合に施す作業です。折れは細く巻いたり開いたりという動作を繰り返すことで生じます。もし折れがそのままの状態で展示など巻き解きを繰り返すと、折れ山の頂点がだんだん擦れ、その箇所にあった墨や顔料も剥落してしまいます。さらに進むと裂けになり、さらに進むと紙自体が欠失し、その場所から折れが増加します。

本紙に厚みの差があるところ、破れて穴があるところ、あるいは折れや穴に対する古い補修の厚みや大きさが適切でなかったところ、ほかにも裏打ち紙が薄すぎたり劣化している場合、つけた糊が硬すぎる場合、糊がはがれて裏打ち紙が浮いてきている場合も折れが生じます。また、折れ伏せで補強をしてもその後の取り扱い方が悪い場合も新たな折れが発生する原因となります。

折れ伏せには美濃紙を使用します。美濃紙の繊維の強 さを利用します。折れ伏せは細く薄い紙を弱ったところ にだけ入れることがポイントです。繊維の強さを利用す るため、繊維方向が折れに対して垂直になるように施し ます。

- 1. 楮紙を細く裁断して折れ伏せを準備する(Fig. 33)
- 2. 養生紙(ポリエステル紙)を作業台の上に置き、その上に本紙を伏せて置く。
- 必要な箇所に、新糊で折れ伏せを入れる(Fig. 34、 Fig. 35、Fig. 36)。

- working table and place the *honshi* face down on the *yojoshi*.
- 3. Apply *orefuse* wherever necessary with paste and a *kiritsugibake* (Fig. 34, Fig. 35, Fig. 36).



Fig. 32 Practical work 実習

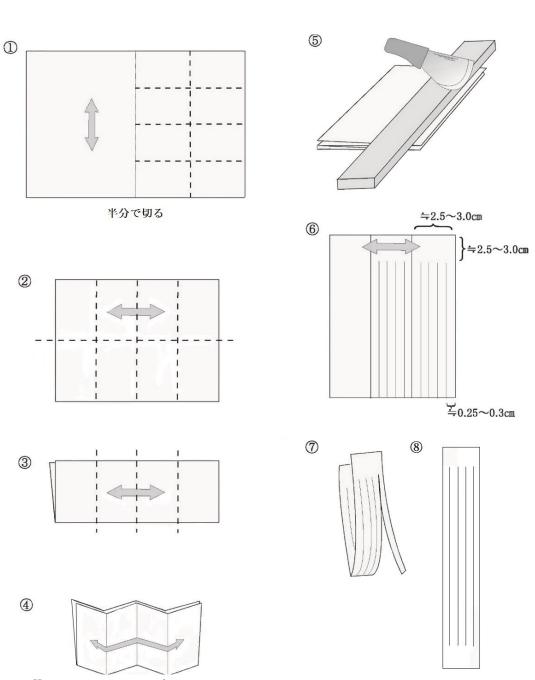


Fig. 33 How to cut paper into orefuse 紙の切り方



Fig. 34 Roll up orefuse with a spatula ヘラで折れ伏せを巻き上げる



Fig. 35 Apply orefuse 折れ伏せを入れる

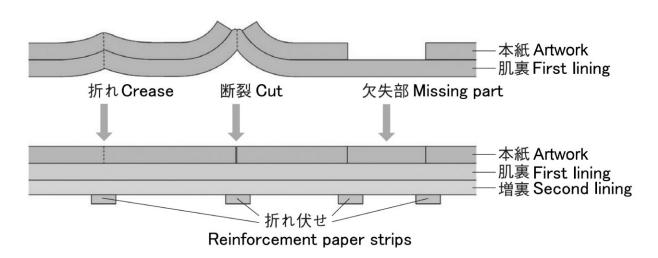


Fig. 36 Sectional view of places where orefuse are applied. Adapted from 『装潢文化財の保存修理』(p. 168), by The Association for Conservation of National Treasures (ACNT) (ed.), 2015, ACNT. (in Japanese) 折れ伏せを入れる箇所の断面(国宝修理装潢師連盟編集、『装潢文化財の保存修理』、国宝修理装潢師連盟、2015、168 頁より引用)

2.9 Applying the final lining

For the final lining, a paper made from kozo fiber and gampi fiber is used. It has both the smoothness of gampi paper and the strength of kozo paper. The recto of the paper is smoother and should be on the outside of the handscroll. Thus, the paste is applied to the other side, which is slightly rough. The aged paste is used. This is a little thicker than that used for the second lining. After the final lining, the scroll is dried on a karibari panel. The lined honshi is attached vertically (the shorter side should be on the top and bottom) to allow the paper to elongated naturally through gravity. The paste is applied to the edges of 付けた部分を撫でてよく接着させます。

2.9 総裏打ち

総裏打ちには雁皮と楮の混合紙を使用します。雁皮紙 の滑らかさと楮紙の強度を併せ持っています。この紙は 片面がよりつるつるしており、この面が外側に来るよう に反対側のややざらざらした面に糊をつけます。糊は2 回目の裏打ちよりも少し濃い古糊を使用します。総裏打 ちを終えたら仮張り板で乾燥させます。重力で自然と伸 びるように縦長の向きに貼ります。新糊を裏打ち紙の縁 につけ、外す際にヘラを差し込む挿入部となる紙片を置 き、仮張り板に上下辺から左右辺の順に刷毛を用いて糊 代部分だけを撫でて貼りこみます。この際、仮張り板を 少し斜め前に傾けると貼りやすいです。最後に爪で貼り

the lining paper, and then a small piece of paper is placed so that we can insert a spatula when removing it from the *karibari panel*. The top and bottom lines are attached to the *karibari panel* first, following which the sides are attached. Only the paste margins are brushed over gently. Tilting the *karibari panel* slightly towards yourself would make the work easier. Lastly, the pasted area needs to be rubbed with your fingernails to ensure it firmly adhered.

- Place a sheet of yojoshi (polyester paper) on the working table and place the honshi face down on the yojoshi.
- Moisten the honshi with a spray and a mizubake (water brush) and straighten with a nadebake (Fig. 37).
- Place the final lining paper on the pasting board.
 Then apply paste to the lining paper with a noribake.
- 4. Lift the final lining paper by using a *hikkake* stick. Place the final lining paper on the *honshi* while stroke with a *nadebake* little by little, and then smoothen the entire surface well with a *nadebake*.
- Place a sheet of yojoshi (polyester paper) on the honshi and beat it with an uchibake.
- Remove the *yojoshi* and smoothen the surface well.
- 7. Apply paste to the part of the lining paper around the *honshi* in 4 *bu* width with a *kiritsugibake* and put it on the *karibari* panel (Fig. 38, Fig. 39).
- Apply the final lining paper to the tail border paper as well and dry it on the *karibari* panel.

- 1. 養生紙(ポリエステル紙)を作業台の上に置き、その上に本紙を伏せて置く。
- 2. 本紙にスプレーと水刷毛を用いて湿りを入れ、撫刷 毛で伸ばす (Fig. 37)。
- 3. 作業台に総裏紙を置き、糊刷毛で全面に糊をつける。
- 4. 糊をつけた総裏紙をひっかけ棒で持ち上げ、本紙の上に撫刷毛で撫でながら置き、さらに刷毛でよく撫でる。
- 5. 本紙の上に養生紙を置き、打刷毛で打つ。
- 6. 養生紙を取り除き、撫刷毛でよく撫でる。
- 7. 本紙まわりの裏打紙部分に切り継ぎ刷毛で4分幅に 糊をつけ、仮張り乾燥を行う (Fig. 38、Fig. 39)。
- 8. 巻末紙も同様に裏打ちをし、仮張り乾燥を行う。



Fig. 37 Moisten the *honshi* with a *mizubake* 本紙に水刷毛で湿りを入れる



Fig. 38 Put the *honshi* on the *karibari* panel 本紙を仮張り板につける

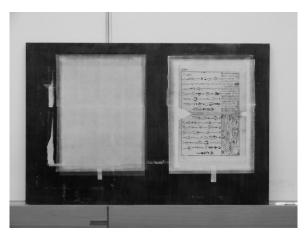


Fig. 39 Dry on the *karibari* panel 仮張り乾燥



Fig. 41 Practical work 実習



Karibari panel is a panel made of 7 to 9 layers of sturdy kozo paper, such as hosokawa paper or sekishu paper, which are pasted onto a lattice frame made out of the sapwood from Japanese cedar. The uppermost surface of the board is coated with persimmon tannin. Drying on a Karibari panel is done by fixing the moistened sheet of paper/silk/ honshi with paste applied only around the edge.

Adapted from 『装潢文化財の保存修理』(p. 170), by The Association for Conservation of National Treasures (ACNT) (ed.), 2015, ACNT. (in Japanese)



Fig. 40 Practical work 実習



Fig. 42 Practical work 実習

仮張り乾燥

仮張り板とは、杉白太の角材を格子状に組んで下地骨とし、その表裏に細川紙や石州紙など丈夫な紙質の楮紙で下貼りを何重にも貼り重ね(7~9層)、表面に柿渋を塗布して仕上げたパネル状のものである。仮張り乾燥とは、この仮張り板に湿った状態のシート状のものを周囲だけ糊で固定して(張り込んで)乾燥させる方法をいう。(国宝修理装潢師連盟編集、『装潢文化財の保存修理』、国宝修理装潢師連盟、2015、170頁より引用)

2.10 Joining the honshi and the tail border paper

We will join the *honshi* and the tail border paper. In the case of handscrolls, when joining the paper, the paper on the right side should always come on top (Fig. 43). Non-diluted paste is used for to join the paper because the paper will expand and shrink due to the moisture contained in the paste if diluted paste is used. Some studios may use a 1:1 mixture of the paste and the aged paste so as to reduce the stiffness of the paper (where the paste is applied) when it is dried. The lined honshi and the tail border paper are placed on the side that the paste is going to be applied to. Their paste margins should be in front of you. Then they are layered, and the one on the top is moved upwards to around half the width of the paste margin so that the paste is applied to both the lined honshi and the tail border paper at once. Shifting the paper on the top for half the width of the paste margin means that it will cover the entire width (1 bu) when they are joined. After they are joined, weights are placed on top to press it down and dry it. It should usually be left for two to three days, or at least for one day. Otherwise, the paper that covers the joined area may become wavy.

- Remove the *honshi* and the tail border paper from the *karibari* panel.
- Determine the finishing size of the honshi (Fig. 44).
- Cut off excess paper from the left side of the lining paper.
- Put the *honshi* and the tail border paper together to determine the pasting margin for joining the two. Use an awl for marking.
- Cut the side of the tail border paper that will be joined to the *honshi* (Fig. 45).
- Apply paste to the pasting margins of the honshi
 and the tail border paper with a kiritsugibake
 (Fig. 46); join the two pieces and hammer the

2.10 本紙と巻末紙の継ぎ

本紙と巻末紙を継ぎます。巻子の場合、必ず右側の紙を上にして継いでいきます (Fig. 43)。継ぎに使用する 糊は水で希釈していない新糊です。水で希釈すると、糊の水分によって紙が伸縮してしまうからです。工房によっては乾いたときのつっぱりを抑えるため、古糊と新糊を半分ずつ混ぜたものを使用することもあります。糊をつける際は、糊をつける面を上に、糊代部分が手前に来る向きで本紙と巻末紙を糊代幅 (1分) の半分ずらして重ね、同時に糊をつけます。半分ずらすことで、継いだ時に設定した糊代幅になります。継いだ後は重しを乗せてプレス乾燥をさせます。継いだ部分が暴れないように、通常は2~3日、最低でも1日はこのままおいておきます。

- 1. 本紙と巻末紙を仮張りからはずす。
- 2. 仕上がりの本紙丈を決める (Fig. 44)。
- 3. 本紙の左側の裏打紙を裁断する。
- 4. 本紙と巻末紙を合わせ、継ぎ部分の糊代位置を決め、星突きで印をつける。
- 5. 巻末紙の継ぎ部分を、糊代幅を見込んで裁断する (Fig. 45)。
- 切り継ぎ刷毛で本紙と巻末紙に糊をつけて継ぎ合わせ (Fig. 46)、継ぎ目を金づちで軽くたたく (Fig. 47)。
- 7. すぐに吸取り紙と板で継いだ部分をプレスする。
- 8. 何度か吸取り紙を交換し、引き続きプレス乾燥を行 う。
- Q: 今回は本紙が 1 枚ですが、本紙が複数枚あった 場合はどのように継ぐのですか?
- A: 基本的には同じです。なるべく長い長さで真っ直ぐにしたいので、上下と左側を切り、すべてを並べて右側を上に重ねて継いでいきます。比較的新しい作品の場合には、過去の糊の痕跡があったり、あるいは紙を継いだところに線が描かれていることがあるので、透過光などでそうした痕跡を確認しながら継ぎます。

- joined part (Fig. 47).
- Place a sheet of blotting paper and a wooden board over the joined part and apply weight to press it down.
- 8. Exchange the blotting paper a few times and continue to dry by pressing down.
- Q: Though we have only one *honshi* this time, if there are several pieces of *honshi*, how would you join them?
- A: Basically, it is the same method. Since we would like to have the straight line as long as possible, the top and bottom and then the left side is cut. All the paper is aligned with the right-side paper on top for joining. In case the artwork is relatively new, there might be traces of the paste used in the past or lines drawn at the point where the paper had been joined. Therefore, it is necessary to check the traces using a transmitted light when joining the paper.



Fig. 45 Cut the left side of honshi and tail border paper 本紙の左側の裏打紙をと巻末紙を裁断する



Fig. 43 Explanation about joining 継ぎについての説明



Fig. 44 Determine the finishing size of the *honshi*. 仕上がりの本紙丈を決める



Fig. 46 Apply paste with a *kiritsugibake* 切り継ぎ刷毛で糊を付ける



Fig. 47 Hammer the joined part rightly 金づちで継ぎ部分を軽くたたく



Fig. 48 Practical work 実習

2.11 Making the cover

The cover has already been lined twice with *misugami* and the mixed paper consisting of *gampi* and *kozo* fibers. On its front, chrysanthemum flowers and cherry blossoms are hand-printed using *gofun* and ochre. If many pieces of paper have to be joined, it is important to adjust the stiffness of the paper throughout. However, the cover is often slightly tougher than *honshi*. Although the cover will be cut into a square, it will ultimately become rectangular because the *hasso* (head rod) will be attached by being rolled in the cover. Semicylindrical formed bamboo stick is used for the head rod.

- Cut off the top and bottom of the cover in the length of adding 5 rin to the length of the finished honshi then cut the off the left and right sides to make a square.
- 2. Cut the head rod into the same length of the honshi (Fig. 49).
- Apply pieces of gold leaf to the cut ends of the head rod.
- 4. Attach the head rod to the cover with paste. Press firmly for a while (Fig. 50).
- 5. Once the head rod has adhered well, apply paste with a *kiritsugibake* and attach the cover to the head rod, rolling the end of the cover around the

2.11 表紙作製

表紙用の紙は、美栖紙と雁皮楮混合紙を用いて2回裏打ちしたものを使用します。表面に胡粉と黄土で菊と桜の紋が押されています。複数の紙を継いでいく作品は紙の硬さを全体で合わせることが重要ですが、表紙は本紙より若干強めであることが多いです。表紙は正方形に切りますが、八双を巻き込んで取り付けるため、仕上りは長方形になります。八双には細い半円柱の形に削った竹を使用します。

- 1. 本紙丈に5厘加えた寸法で表紙の天地を裁断し、同 寸で左右も裁断して正方形にする。
- 2. 八双を本紙丈の長さで切る (Fig. 49)。
- 3. 八双の両側小口に金箔を貼る。
- 4. 表紙の八双取り付け位置に糊で八双を付け、固定するまでしばらくおく (Fig. 50)。
- 5. 八双が固定したら表紙糊代に切り継ぎ刷毛で糊を つけ、八双を巻き込んで取り付ける。
- 吸取り紙と板に表紙の八双部分をはさみ、プレス乾燥をする(Fig. 51)。
- 7. 何度か吸取り紙を交換し、引き続きプレス乾燥を行 う。

head rod.

- 6. Apply weight to the joined area and dry by pressing down (Fig. 51).
- 7. Exchange the blotting paper a few times and continue to dry by pressing down.



Fig. 49 Cut head rod 八双を切る



Fig. 50 Attach the head rod to the cover with paste 表紙に八双を糊でつける



Fig. 51 Dry by pressing プレス乾燥をする

2.12 Preparing the roller rod

The roller rod is made from Japanese cedar. Japanese cedar is resistant to water and humidity, which reduces the likelihood of warping and distortion occuring. Thus, it is often used to make the roller rods of objects that are stored in rolled form. The roller knobs are made of ebony. It is very hard and rarely chips. It also gets glossier with use over time. When finishing the restoration, an inscription is written to indicate that restoration work has been done on the object. For example, in my studio, we write the year that the restoration work was completed, the owner's name, the title of the artwork, the name of the company (studio) that conducted the restoration work, and so on.

2.12 軸すげ

軸には杉を使用します。杉は水や湿気に強く、反りに くくねじれも少ないので、巻物の軸によく使われます。 軸首は黒檀です。これはとても硬い木でかけたりしにく く、また使うほどに色が出て艶が出てきます。修復を終 えたら軸に修理銘を記します。私の所属している工房で は、修復を終えた年号、所有者、作品名、社名等を記載 します。

- 1. 予定の本紙丈から軸長を算出する (Fig. 52)。
- 2. 中軸に軸首を取りつけるツノを作る(Fig. 53)。
- 3. 中軸に軸首を膠でつける (Fig. 54)。
- 4. 中軸に墨で修理銘を記す。

- Determine the length of the roller rod (Fig. 52).
- Use a knife to make a protrusion on each end of the roller rod (Fig. 53).
- 3. Use animal glue to attach the roller knobs to the roller rod (Fig. 54).
- 4. Writing an inscription on the rod with Chinese ink.



Fig. 52 Cut the roller rod in calculated length 軸を算出した長さで切る



Fig. 53 Make a protrusion ツノを作る



Fig. 54 Attach the roller knobs to the roller rod 中軸に軸首をつける



Fig. 55 Practical work 実習

2.13 Trimming off the top and bottom of the honshi 2.13 本紙裁ち

Before the trimming, the back of the final lining is rubbed using a kind of wax called ibotaro in order to make its surface smooth. Ibotaro is made from the secrete of the insect named ibota, and its powder is put in a cloth bag when using it. The backside of the lined honshi that the power wax has been applied to is rubbed using beads. As the traces of beads may

本紙を裁つ前に、イボタ蝋というワックスの一種を使 用して本紙の裏面を滑らかにする裏ずりを行います。イ ボタ蝋というのは、イボタという虫の分泌物から作られ るもので、粉状のものを布の袋の中に入れて使用しま す。イボタ蝋をはたいた本紙の裏側を数珠でこするので すが、直接こすると痕がついてしまうため、本紙の上に 裏ずり用の紙を置き、その上から数珠で優しくこすりま remain on the paper if it is rubbed directly, a sheet of paper is placed on the lined *honshi* for protection, and then it is rubbed gently with beads. Then, we will cut the margin paper that adhered to the top and bottom of the *honshi* and make the lined *honshi* parallel throughout.

- Remove the weight and place the *honshi* on the working table face down.
- Sprinkle ibota(ro) on the back of the honshi, cover with a sheet of kozo paper, and rub with beads (Fig. 56).
- 3. With the *honshi* placed face up, put a ruler according to the finishing size.
- 4. Check the size and use an awl to mark the places to be cut (Fig. 57).
- 5. Cut off the top and bottom (Fig. 58).
- Q: What kind of paper do you use for the protection during the rubbing process?
- A: This time, we used *kozo* paper. However, as long as it is thin paper, any kind of paper is fine. We also do not really think about which side of the paper, recto or verso, should be faced down.

- す。その後、本紙の上下に付けた足し紙部分を裁断して、 全体を平行にしていきます。
- 1. 本紙をプレスからはずし、作業台に伏せて置く。
- 本紙裏面にイボタ蝋をはたき、楮紙を置いて裏ずり をする (Fig. 56)。
- 3. 本紙表面を出し、定規を仕上がり本紙寸法に合わせて置く。
- 4. そのまま全体のバランスを見て裁断位置を決め、星 突きで印をつける (Fig. 57)。
- 5. 天地の裁断を行う (Fig. 58)。
 - Q: 裏ずり用の紙には何を使用するのですか?
- A: 今回は楮紙を使用していますが、薄い紙であれば 種類は何でも構いません。紙の裏表も過度に考慮 しません。



Fig. 56 Rub with beads 裏ずりをする



Fig. 57 Mark with an awl on the places to cut 星付きで裁断位置に印を付ける



Fig. 58 Cut off the top and bottom 天地を裁断する



Fig. 59 Practical work 実習

2.14 Attaching the roller rod to the tail border paper

The roller rod is attached to the tail border paper. The tail border paper will be wrapped around the rod for two and a half turns. If the inscription on the rod is seen through, it can be wrapped for three turns. At the starting point, the corners of the paper are cut off a little so that they are hidden when being rolled and the paper can be rolled firmly to the rod. The paper should be carefully rolled up straight. It should not be rolled diagonally, so that the paper always overlaps perfectly.

- Determine the place on the tail border paper where the roller will be attached; fold along this place (Fig. 60).
- 2. Apply paste to the very edge of the tail border paper with a *kiritsugibake* (Fig. 61). When doing so, ensure that the roller knobs protrude evenly at the top and bottom.
- Apply paste along the fold marked in task 2. Roll the rod from the edge of the tail border paper until the marked fold (Fig. 62).

2.14 軸付け

軸に巻末紙を2周半ほど巻いて取り付けていきます。 軸に記した銘が透けて見えてしまう場合は3周ほど巻き 付けます。巻いた時に角が飛び出さず、軸木にしっかり 沿って固定できるようにするため、巻き始めの角を少し だけ三角形に切り落とします。斜めにならずに紙がきち んと重なるように注意しながら巻いていきます。

- 1. 巻末紙の軸を取り付ける位置を決め、その位置に折り曲げ筋を付ける (Fig. 60)。
- 2. 巻末紙の一番端に切り継ぎ刷毛で糊を付け、軸を取り付ける (Fig. 61)。その際、軸首の出が天地均等になるようにする。
- 3. 先につけた折り曲げ筋部分に糊を付ける。続けて、 巻末紙端に付けた軸を巻き込んでいき、その筋部分 で糊付けする (Fig. 62)。



Fig. 60 Determine the place of attached 軸の取り付け位置を決める



Fig. 62 Roll the rod from the edge to attach 軸を巻き込んで取り付ける

2.15 Attaching the wrapping cord to the cover



2.15 表紙紐付け

The wrapping cord is attached to the cover. Silk braids (kumihimo) are mainly used, and its pattern and color tone should match the artwork. We choose the braid that has a width that corresponds to the size of the cover and the diameter when it is rolled up. This time, we use 2 bu width of cord. The braid should be of a length that can wrap around the rolled scroll three times and be tied.

- Remove the press from the cover.
- Make 1 bu 5 rin width of cut so as to be a little narrower than the width of the cord at side of the head rod at the center on the cover.
- Attach the wrapping cord (Fig. 64).



Fig. 61 Apply paste with a kiritsugibake 切り継ぎ刷毛で糊を付ける



Fig. 63 Practical work 実習

表紙に紐を取り付けます。作品に合わせた紋様や色調 で、絹の組紐を多く使用します。紐幅は表紙の大きさ、 巻径に合わせて選択します。今回は2分幅の物を使用し ます。長さは3周巻いて留めることのできる長さにしま す。

- 1. 表紙をプレスからはずす。
- 八双を包んだ表紙の中央の際に、紐を通すため紐幅 よりやや狭い穴(1分5厘)を開ける。
- 3. 紐を取り付ける (Fig. 64)。

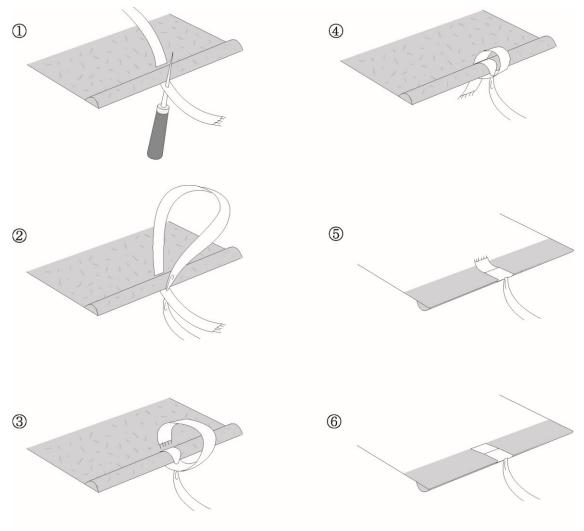


Fig. 64 How to attach the wrapping cord 紐の付け方

2.16 Joining the cover and the honshi

The cover should be slightly larger than the lined *honshi*, so that it can protect the lined *honshi* when it is rolled up. The method for joining them is basically the same as that of joining the lined *honshi* and the tail border paper. However, at this time, they should be joined as the marks made with an awl are hidden because this part will be seen after joining. In addition, not too much paste should be applied because it may get squeezed out to the front if applied excessively.

 Place a ruler on the working table and place the top end of the *honshi* along that ruler.

2.16 本紙と表紙の継ぎ

表紙は本紙より若干大きくなります。これは、巻いたときに表紙が本紙を保護するためです。継ぎ方は基本的には本紙と巻末紙の継ぎ方と同じですが、見える部分になるため星付きで付けた穴を隠すように継ぎます。また、糊はつけすぎると表に出てきてしまうため、糊が多すぎてもいけません。

- 1. 作業台に定規を置き、本紙上辺をその定規に添わせ 固定する。
- 2. 表紙も定規に添わせながら、継ぎ部分を本紙に合わせて位置を決める (Fig. 65)。
- 3. 本紙の継ぎ部分を、糊代幅(1分)を見込んで裁断 する(Fig. 66)。

- to determine the pasting margin (Fig. 65).
- 3. Add the width of the pasting margin (1 *bu*) to the 5. finishing size of the *honshi* and cut off the excess (Fig. 66).
- Apply paste to the *honshi* and the cover in half width of the pasting margins; join the two pieces and hammer the joined part.
- Place a sheet of yojoshi (polyester paper), a sheet of blotting paper, and a piece of wooden board over the joined area and apply weight to it.
- Exchange the blotting paper a few times and continue to dry the *honshi* by pressing down.
- Q: If the *honshi* is not parallel, how can it be cut?
- In the case that the *honshi* is not straight, use the point that is close to the edge as a reference to measure the paste margin and trim it.



Fig. 65 Determine the pasting margin 継ぎ位置を決める

2.17 Finishing

The cord is wrapped around the scroll, and a fringe is made at the end of the cord. Unlike hanging scrolls that are rolled a bit loose and made tight at the end, handscrolls are firmly rolled up from the start. If it becomes loose during rolling, lightly pulling the other side will help to make tighten the roll. Please carefully roll the scroll and make sure the paper is always perfectly overlapping (Fig. 67). If the rolling direction

- Place the cover next to the honshi along the ruler 4. 切り継ぎ刷毛で本紙と表紙に糊代幅の半分の幅で糊 を付け継ぎ合わせ、継ぎ目を金づちで軽くたたく。
 - すぐに吸取り紙と板で継いだ部分をプレスする。
 - 何度か吸取り紙を交換し、引き続きプレス乾燥を行 6. う。
 - 本紙が斜めになっている場合はどのように裁断 すればよいですか?
 - A: 本紙が斜めになっている場合は、出ている方を 基準にして糊代幅を設定して裁断します。



Fig. 66 Cut off the excess of the *honshi* 本紙の継ぎ部分を裁断する

2.17 仕上げ

巻子の紐を巻き、先に房を作ります。巻子は掛軸のよ うに緩めに巻いて最後に締めるという巻き方ではなく、 最初からあまり緩く巻きません。巻いている間に緩んだ と感じたら、反対側を軽く引き、都度締めていきます (Fig. 67)。斜めにタケノコ状にならずに、上下がきち んと重なるように気を付け巻き上げてください。

巻き終えたら紐を上から下に3周巻きつけ、紐先を折 り2周目の紐の下をくぐらせます。くぐらせた紐を引き、

becomes diagonal, you will get disorganized rolled edges that look like a bamboo shoot.

After the scroll is rolled up, the cord is wrapped around it three times, as the cord goes from the top to the bottom. Then the cord is folded and put through underneath the second lap. The looped end that has been passed underneath is then pulled to fasten the scroll (Fig. 68). The cord is of appropriate length if its end does not touch the table surface when the scroll is placed on the table. The cord is cut after taking the length for the fringe into account. The length of the fringe should be the same as width of the cord. It is made using a thread that is of the same color as the cord, otherwise the thread will stand out (Fig. 69).

 Determine the length of the wrapping cord; tightly tie one end of the cord with thread.

巻きを締めます (Fig. 68)。紐は台に置いたときに紐先が下につかない程度の長さにしますが、切る時は房を作る分の長さを残します。房の長さは紐幅と同じくらいに作り、目立たないように紐の色と似た色の糸を使用します (Fig. 69)。

1. 巻紐の長さを決めて切り、紐端を糸で始末する。



Fig. 67 Roll up the handscroll 巻子を巻き上げる

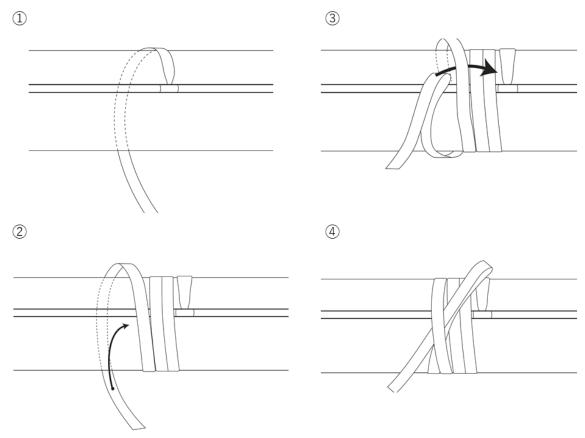


Fig.68 How to tie the wrapping cord. Adapted from 『日本画・書跡の損傷―見方・調べ方』(pp. 61-62), by Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties & The Association for Conservation of National Treasures, 2013, Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties. (in Japanese) 紐の巻き方(東京文化財研究所・国宝修理装潢師連盟、『日本画・書跡の損傷―見方・調べ方』、東京文化財研究所、2013、61-62 頁より引用)

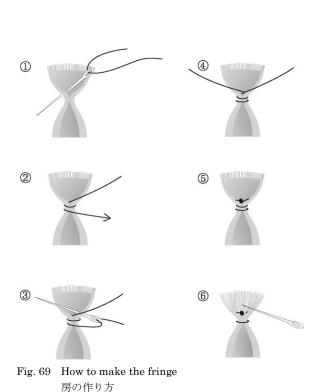


Fig. 70 The completed handscroll

完成した巻子

2.18 Storing

The wrapping paper is made using a sheet of kozo paper. The paper is wrapped a bit loosely around a stick like this measuring stick and is slowly pushed down from the top to the bottom. This process is repeated once more after turning it upside down. Once the stick is removed and the paper is opened, the paper is wrinkled. This wrinkled paper serves as a cushion that protects the scroll in a storage box.

The scroll is placed on the wrinkled paper diagonally as the side on which the wrapping cord is looped is in front. Then, it is wrapped from the corner of the paper in front. When the paper is wrapped around the scroll about twice, the left and right corners are folded inside. After the scroll is wrapped up with the paper, it is stored in the box. This time, we use the storage box which is made of neutral paper.

1. Roll the wrapping paper around a stick and squeeze it down to make creases (Fig. 71, Fig. 72).

2.18 収納

楮紙を使用して包み紙を作成します。ものさし等の棒 に紙を緩く巻き付けて、上から下にゆっくり押し下げま す。これを上下反対にして再度行います。棒を抜いて紙 を広げると紙にしわができていますが、これが箱の中で 巻子を守るクッションの役目を果たします。

巻子の輪になっている方を手前にして紙の対角線上 に置き、紙の端から包んでいきます。2周ほど包んだら 左右を折り込み、続けて最後まで包んだら収納箱に入れ ます。今回は中性紙製の保存箱を使用します。

- 1. 楮紙を棒に巻き付け縮みを作り、包紙を作る(Fig. 71、Fig. 72)_o
- 巻子を包み紙で包み、箱に収納する(Fig. 73、Fig. 74)。
- Q: 紙の繊維方向はどうしていますか?
- 特に決まりはありませんが、私は糸目に沿って 巻き付けています。

- 2. Unfold the paper and use it to wrap the finished handscroll (Fig. 73, Fig. 74).
- Q: Do you consider the fiber direction?
- A: There is no such rule. I personally wrap the paper around the stick along its chain line.



Fig. 71 Wrap the paper around a stick 紙を棒に巻き付ける



Fig. 72 Push down from the top to the bottom slowly 上から下にゆっくり押し付ける



Fig. 73 Wrap from the corner of the paper in front 紙の手前の端から包む



Fig. 74 Fold both corners of paper inside 両端の紙を内側に折り込む



Fig. 75 Practical work 実習

2.19 Book binding

The book is bound with thread, but the pages are bound with paper string before being bound together with the cover. The paper string is made by rolling and twisting the paper strip diagonally while pulling it to retain the tension (Fig. 76). Prior to being bound with the paper strings, paper strips are crossed vertically and horizontally to the pages so as to prevent them from going out of place. Then, a wooden ruler is placed at $2\ bu$ (about 6mm) from the edge of the pages, the inner binding holes are made, and they are bound with the paper strings. The inner binding should be done at different positions from the main binding. Once the paper strings are put through the holes and tied on the other side, the ends are cut, and the strings are lightly hammered to flatten them.

The main binding is the four-hole binding. The distance of binding holes is determined first. This time, we make the holes 4 bu apart from each. The binding holes are first made at the points that are the same distanced between each binding hole (4 bu) from the top and from the bottom and then made at every point that marks a third of the distance between the first two holes. The thread should be tightened each time passing through the hole to prevent the binding from being loose. In addition, as the thread has to be passed through the same hole several times, it requires a special care not to tangle the thread with the threads that have been passed already. Finally, the thread is passed underneath the threads passing between the holes, and a knot is made. The thread is put into the hole, went through the pages oblique, went out in between the pages as well as it is done in the beginning, and cut.

- Put a cover on the sample pages and bind with four-hole binding.
- 2. Put a cover on the pages and bind it using four-hole binding (Fig. 77, Fig. 78).

2.19 冊子綴じ

冊子は糸で綴じてありますが、表紙をつける前に中身を紙のこよりを用いて仮綴じします。こよりは斜めに引っ張りつつ巻くようにねじっていきます (Fig. 76)。こよりで仮綴じする前に、中の頁がずれないように紙帯を十字にかけます。紙帯でまとめたら、定木を端から2分のところに置いて、綴じ穴を作りこよりで綴じます。仮綴じは本綴じと重ならない位置で行います。こよりを穴に通したら反対側で縛り仮綴じします。余分なこよりを切り、金槌で軽くたたいて平らにします。

今回は四つ目綴じで本綴じを行います。まず、綴じ幅を決めますが、今回は4分幅で綴じます。綴じ穴は、上下の端から綴じ幅と同じ長さの位置に1つずつ、残った中間部分を3等分した2か所に穴をあけます。糸を通してきますが、綴じが緩まないように1回ごとにしっかり糸を締めてください。また、同じ穴に針を何度も通してきますが、前の糸と絡めないように気を付ける必要があります。最後に、かかっている糸にくぐらせて玉を作って止めたら、針を中に通し、はじめと同様に頁の間から斜めに出して余分な糸を切ります。

- 1. 冊子雛形の仮綴じをする。
- 表紙を付け、四つ目綴じの本綴じを行う(Fig. 77、 Fig. 78)。
 - Q: 穴の位置は必ず端から 4 分のところなのですか?
 - A: いいえ、冊子の大きさなどに合わせてそれぞれ設 定します。
- Q: 穴の数は必ず4つなのですか?
- A: 日本の伝統的な和綴じと呼ばれる冊子の綴じ方は、穴が4つの四つ目綴じが一般的です。
- Q: 糸を冊子の中ほどから通すとのことですが、何枚 目など決まりはありますか?
- A: いいえ、これは結び玉が外側に出ないようにする ためなので、一番下から出なければ特に決まりは ありません。
- Q: 糸の太さはどのように決めるのですか?
- A: まずは強度、冊子の厚さ、大きさによって、あと は見た目によって決めます。文化財の場合は、も

- Q: Are the holes at the top and the bottom always 4 bu from the edge?
- A: No, this is decided based on several factors, such as the size of the books.
- Q: Are there always four binding holes?
- A: In traditional Japanese book binding, which is called *watoji*, it is common to have four binding holes.
- Q: You explained that the thread goes into the hole from the middle pages of the book. Are there any rules regarding how many pages from the top it should be?
- A: No. This is done in order to prevent the knot from coming outside, so there are no special rules other than putting the thread from the bottom (the front or back of the book).
- Q: How do you decide the thickness of the binding thread?
- A: The strength of the thread, the thickness of the book, and the size of the book would be considered first. Following that, the appearance of the thread is thought about. In the case that it is a cultural property, there are more things to be considered when deciding on the thread. For instance, in such a case, one would need to consider whether the thread for binding the book is the original thread from when the book was made.

ともとついていた糸が制作当時のものかなど、 色々なことを検討して決めます。



Fig. 76 Make paper string こよりを作る



Fig. 77 Bind with four-hole binding 四つ目綴じで綴じる

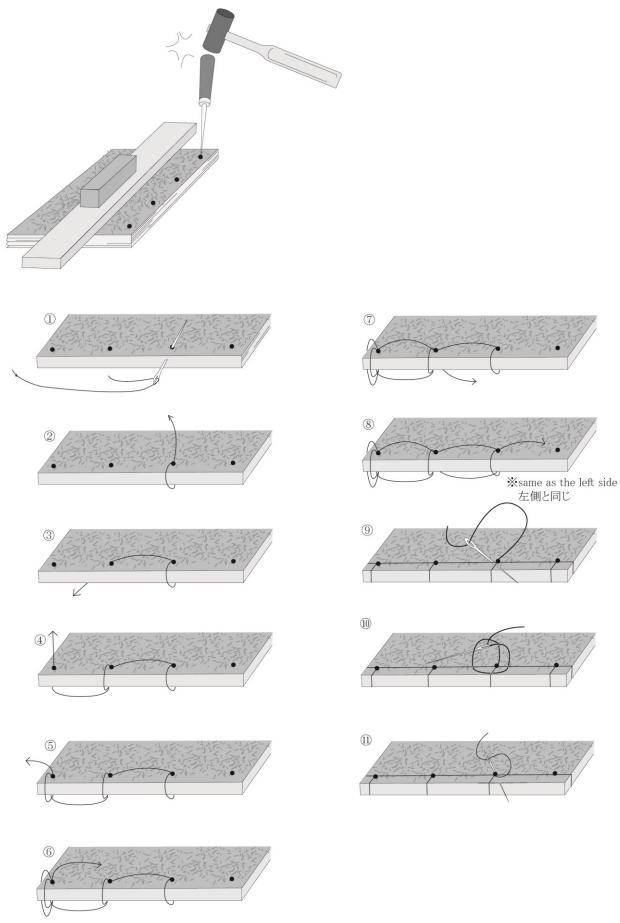


Fig. 78 How to bind a book with four-hole binding 四つ目綴じの綴じ方

 $Table\ 2\qquad List\ of\ the\ paper$

Use for the course	Common name	Producing area	ID	Materials	Approx. basis weight (g/m²)
hoshushi	etc.	Gifu	2.4 momme*		15.5
(infill paper)					
tenchi tashigami		Gifu	2.4 momme	kozo	15.5
(margin paper),					
kanmatsushi					
(tail border paper)					
the first lining	usuminogami	Gifu	2.5 momme	kozo	13.3
paper					
the second lining	misugami	Nara	middle	kozo, gofun (calcium	18.5
paper				carbonate)	
orefuse paper		Gifu	2.5 momme	kozo	13.3
the final lining		Gifu	thin	gampi 70 %,	15.2
paper				<i>kozo</i> 30 %	
cover		Gifu, Kyoto	3.0 monme	gampi,	20.5
				natural dye (indigo)	
mikaeshigami		Gifu	thin	gampi 70 %,	15.2
(inside cover)				<i>kozo</i> 30 %	
wrapping paper		Gifu	2.4 momme	kozo	15.5
	Sanmoa® paper	Kochi		polyethylene -	15
				polypropylene	
				conjugated fiber,	
				wood pulp	
	rayon paper	Gifu		rayon, soft wood	18
				pulp	
	polyester paper	Kochi		polyester	12
honshi				kozo	21.8

^{*}momme (知): a traditional Japanese unit of weight. 1 momme is about 3.75 grams. When this unit is applied to washi, it shows the weight of one sheet of washi. As the size of a sheet of washi differs depending on periods (eras), producing areas and kinds of paper, it is important to remember that momme is not used for describing basis weight of the paper.

Translated by GOTO Rika

表2 使用紙一覧

使用用途	通称等	産地等	原材料	坪量(g/㎡)
補修紙		楮紙:岐阜 2.4匁※	楮繊維	15.5
天地足し紙、		楮紙:岐阜 2.4匁	楮繊維	15.5
巻末紙				
肌裏紙	薄美濃紙	楮紙:岐阜 2.5匁	楮繊維	13.3
増裏紙	美栖紙	楮紙:奈良 中肉	楮繊維、胡粉	18.5
折伏紙		楮紙:岐阜 2.5匁	楮繊維	13.3
総裏紙		雁皮楮混合紙:岐阜 薄口	雁皮繊維70% 楮繊	15.2
			維30%	
表紙		楮紙:岐阜 3.0匁	楮繊維	20.5
		唐紙加工:京都		
見返紙		雁皮楮混合紙:岐阜 薄口	雁皮繊維70% 楮繊	15.2
			維30%	
包紙		楮紙:岐阜 2.4匁	楮繊維	15.5
養生紙	サンモア	高知	ポリエチレン+ポリ	15
			プロピレン複合繊	
			維、木材パルプ	
養生紙	レーヨン紙	岐阜	レーヨン繊維、針葉	18
			樹パルプ	
養生紙	ポリエステル紙	高知	ポリエステル	12
本紙			楮繊維	21.8

※1匁=3.75g。 和紙においては紙1枚あたりの重量を表す。紙の寸法が時代、産地、種類などによって異なるため、坪量ではないことに注意が必要。

3 Handling Hanging Scrolls and Folding Screens

掛軸と屏風の取り扱い

The Association for Conservation of National Treasures IKEDA Kazuhiko

3.1 Handling hanging scrolls

We will now introduce the handling method and the structure of Japanese hanging scrolls and folding screens. Cultural properties have more often been damaged during handling than by insects or disasters. Therefore, we would like you to learn the proper way of handling in this session. In Japan, curators and specialized staff at shipping companies deal with these objects, but some museums overseas may have special handlers for such work. Another thing that we would like you to know is what the Japanese care about when handling cultural properties. For instance, in Western museums, it is common to wear gloves when handling objects. However, in Japan, we rarely wear the gloves unless they are metal objects or photographs because we consider that touch sense is important. We wash the hands well before the work.

Structure of hanging scrolls

The word "hanging scroll" covers a wide variety of scrolls (Fig. 1). Some are used for religious purposes. Others may be to display and appreciate. The formats and materials used differ depending on the kind of scroll. Similar to handscrolls that you made in the course, hanging scrolls consist of many layers of paper. This sample is made in a standard format. Four layers of lining are applied, and many kinds of paper and mounting fabrics are used. It is composed of about 30 parts (Fig. 2). Although it looks like one piece, we can recognize that they are joined together with narrow lines when we look at it carefully. Each part is lined; the first lining paper is *minogami* and the second lining paper is *misugami*. The mounting fabrics that

国宝修理装潢師連盟

池田 和彦

3.1 掛軸の取り扱い

日本の掛軸や屏風の取り扱いと構造について学んでいただきます。文化財の損傷は、虫や災害によるものだけではなく、取り扱いの過程で起きることも多いため、正しい取り扱い方を知っていただきたいと思います。日本では学芸員や運送会社の専門スタッフが取り扱いますが、海外では特別なハンドラーを置いている美術館などもあると思います。もう一つ、文化財を取り扱う際に日本人が何を気にしているかということを知っていただきたいと思います。例えば、欧米では取り扱い時に手袋を着用する美術館が一般的かと思いますが、日本では金属製品や写真作品以外ではあまり手袋を着用しません。手先の感覚を重視し、素手で取り扱いを行います。作業前にはしっかりと手洗いを行います。

■ 掛軸の構造

一口に掛軸と言っても、宗教的な用途のもの、鑑賞用のものなど実はいろいろな種類があり、種類によって形や使用している材料が異なります (Fig. 1)。皆さんが研修で作製された巻子と同様に、掛軸も何枚もの紙で構成されています。この見本はスタンダードな形式のものですが、4層の裏打ちと様々な紙や裂が使用されており、約30のパーツから構成されています。一つのパーツのようでも、よく見ると細くつなぎ合わせていることがわかります (Fig. 2)。それぞれのパーツは美濃紙で肌裏打ち、美栖紙で増裏打ちがされており、厚みの様々な裂のパーツも裏打ちをして紙で出来ている本紙と表装裂のコシを合わせます。すべてのコシが揃ったら、仮張りした後に各パーツをつなぎ合わせます。その後、中裏打ち、総裏打ちをし、最後に軸、風帯、紐をつけます。

ここに掛軸の材料があります。軸首にもいろいろな種類があり、作品の特性や目的、グレード(格)などに応じて使い分けます(Fig. 3)。例えば、宗教画には金物が

vary in thickness are also lined to adjust the resilience of the *honshi* and the mounting fabrics. Once the resilience of all parts is almost same, each part is joined after they are dried on the *karibari* panel. After that, the third lining and the final lining are applied to complete the mounting, and the roller rod, the decorative straps, and the hanging cord are attached to complete the hanging scroll.

Here are the materials used in hanging scrolls. There are many kinds of roller knobs (Fig. 3). It will be chosen corresponding to the characteristics and purposes of the artwork and grade of formality. For example, the metal knobs are likely to be used for religious paintings. Even among secular paintings and calligraphy, ivory ones are often used for the highgrade and valuable artworks. However, they are difficult to obtain or ship nowadays due to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (known as CITES or Washington Convention). Those coated with urushi are mostly used for simple scrolls, such as the scrolls for tea ceremonies. The substrate is wood, and just its surface is coated with urushi. Thus, the urushi coating will deteriorate with age. If we wear metal objects such as jewelry and they touch the deteriorated urushi coating, the coating might easily come off. For the artworks that appear to have Chinese or Korean influences, imported wood such as rosewood and ebony are chosen. The knobs on here look similar to ivory, but they made from the bones or horns/antlers of cows or deer. The horns and bones are used as substitutes for ivory when the ivory is preferred but difficult to obtain because of its high cost. The shape of the knob also varies. It could depend on the owner's intention or would be proposed by conservators or curators according to the traditional rules when restoring the scroll. In the past, there were people who took up the responsibility of coordinating these things. With respect to the storage boxes for hanging scrolls, there are variety of grades and kinds, and the

多く使用されますし、世俗的な書画の中でも珍重される ハイグレードの作品には象牙が用いられる事が多いで すが、今はワシントン条約によって入手や輸送が難しい です。漆塗りのものは、主に茶道用の簡素なものなどに 用いられます。中は木地で表面を漆でコーティングして いるだけなので、時代が立つと漆が痛んできます。もし、 金属製品などを身に着けていて、それが劣化した漆に当 たったら簡単にはがれてしまいます。中国や朝鮮の影響 を感じる作品に対しては輸入材である紫檀や黒檀が選 ばれます。こちらは象牙に似ていますが、牛や鹿の角や 骨でできています。角や骨は、象牙を使用したいが高価 なために使えない場合などに代替品として使用されて いました。形状も様々で、作品の所有者の好みや、修復 時に我々技術者や学芸員が伝統的なルールに則って提 案したりします。昔は、こういうものをコーディネート する役割の人がいたと言われています。

掛軸が保存されている収納箱にもいろいろなグレード・種類があり、作品によって箱も使い分けます(Fig. 4)。また、箱に覆いをつけますが、覆いにも伝統的なスタイルがあります。伝統的には柿渋で模様をつけた和紙に裏打ちをしたものを使用しています。「印籠蓋」は格式の高い収納箱の形式で、非常に気密性が高いです。日本は湿度が高いため、気密性が高いということはとても重要です。さらに格式の高いものとして箱が二重になっている二重箱があります。この外箱の表面に漆を塗るとさらに格式が高くなります。

- Q: 修復の際に軸首は必ず取り替えますか? それも 再利用しますか?
- A: 基本的には利用できるものは再利用します。壊れていたり、作品とグレードが合っていない場合などは取り換えます。
- Q: 軸首を取り換えた場合、軸書きにそのことを書き残しますか?
- A: 書くこともあるかもしれませんが、一般的には 修復報告書に記述するだけで軸には書きませ ん。使わなくなった部材はすべて所有者へ返却 します。
- Q: 保存箱に使用する木の種類は何ですか?
- A: 桐です。

appropriate one is chosen in accordance with the artwork (Fig. 4). We have the outer box for the storage box, and there are traditional styles even for the outer boxes. Traditionally, Japanese paper that is decorated with fermented persimmon juice and lined is used. The "inro style" is a highly formal type of storage box. It is extremely airtight. Since Japan has high humidity, airtightness is very important. The double storage boxes are more formal. It signifies that there is another storage box to cover the storage box that the scroll is accommodated in. The storage box whose outside is coated with urushi is more formal.

- Q: During conservation work, do you always replace the knobs or do you reuse them?
- A: Basically, those we think to be reusable will be reused. The knobs that have been broken or that are considered to be unsuitable to the artwork, such as in terms of its formality, will be replaced.
- Q: When the knobs are replaced, do you mention it on the inscription on the roller rod?
- A: That could be written, but usually it is only described in the treatment report and not written on the roller rod. All of the materials that we did not reuse are returned to the owner.
- Q: What kind of tree is used for the storage box?
- A: It is paulownia.



Fig. 4 Storage boxes 保存箱



Fig. 1 Various types of hanging scrolls 様々な種類の掛軸



Fig. 2 Explanation of the structure of a hanging scroll 掛軸の構造の説明



Fig. 3 Samples of roller knobs 軸首

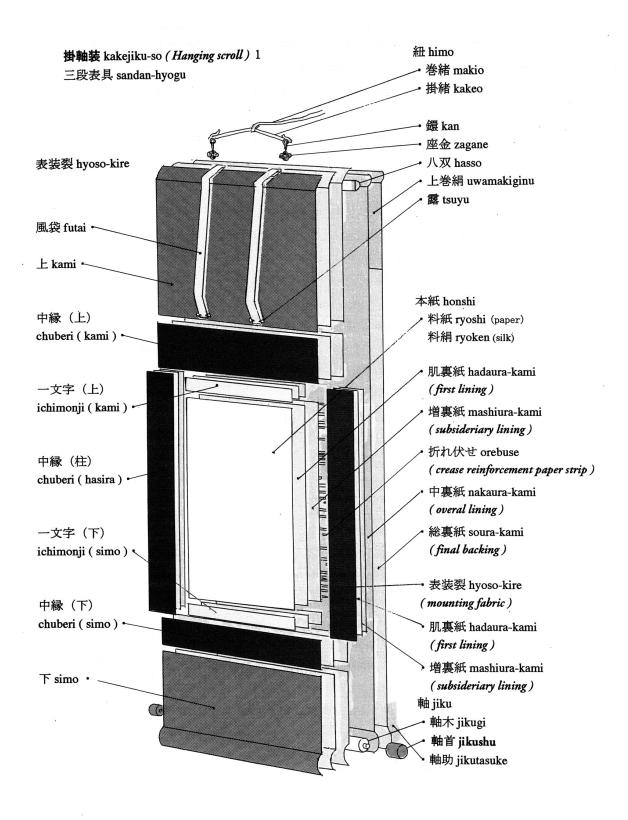


Fig. 5 Structure of hanging scrolls 掛軸の構造

■ Hanging of the hanging scrolls

We will talk about the handling and storage of hanging scrolls. Firstly, please wash your hands well. If you are wearing long-sleeved clothes, you will need to roll your sleeves up. Any jewelry, such as watches and rings, should be removed. When you handle a storage box that contains a hanging scroll, be sure to lift it horizontally. Do not forget to use both of your hands. If you hold the box with only one hand, you may lose your balance and drop the box. Some boxes are wrapped with strings, but the purpose of the string is not for lifting the box. It will not break because you used it to lift the box, but please make sure to hold the box horizontally with both hands.

A box made of paulownia is usually very airtight, which means that the lid cannot be opened easily. So, we begin to open the lid from one end of the box. Please hold the hanging scroll softly. It is advisable to hold it with the hanging rod end toward the bottom in order to apply less pressure to where the artwork is within the scroll.

- Place the box on the table, making sure of where 1. the longer and shorter sides of the box are.
- 2. Untie the string by pulling the cords.
- 3. Take off the lid and place it next to the box.
- Take the hanging scroll out of the box. 4.
- 5. Undo the cloth or paper wrapping of the hanging scroll (Fig. 7).
- Bring the hanging scroll near to the place where 12. 掛軸を整えて、静かに離れる。 6. you would like to hang it.
- Pull and untie the wrapping cord of the hanging scroll and remove the himoshita* (Fig. 8). *Himoshita is a piece of paper that prevents the back side of a hanging scroll from being rubbed by the wrapping cord when it is rolled up.
- 8. Unroll the upper part of the hanging scroll a little on the table.
- Hook the hanging cord of the hanging scroll onto 9. the end of a yahazu stick.

■ 掛軸をかける

掛軸の取り扱い、収納についてお話していきます。ま ず、手をよく洗い、長袖の方は袖をまくり、時計や指輪 等も外してください。掛軸が入った箱は、必ず両手で、 水平に持ちます。片手で持つとバランスを崩して落下の 原因になります。箱によっては、紐のかかった箱があり ますが、これは持ち運びのための紐ではありません。持 ったからといって切れることはありませんが、必ず箱に 手を添えて水平に持ってください。

蓋を開けるときは、桐製の箱は気密性が高くいきなり 開けることができませんので、まず端から開けます。ま た、掛軸を持つときは柔らかく持ってください。八双を 下にして持つと、本紙裏側にあたる掛軸の内側に手の圧 力をかけなくて済みます。

- 1. 箱の縦横を確認して、箱を置く。
- 2. 箱の紐を引っ張って解く。(紐付き箱の場合)
- 箱を開け、蓋は脇に置く。 3.
- 4. 掛軸を取り出す。
- 5. 掛軸を包んでいる紙や絹を開く (Fig. 7)。
- 実際に掛ける場所の近くへ掛軸を運ぶ。 6.
- 7. 巻緒を解き、紐下(巻いたときに紐で掛軸が摩擦す ることを防ぐための紙片)を外す(Fig. 8)。
- 8. 台の上で掛軸の上部のみ本紙が露出する直前まで 開く。
- 9. 矢筈のフックを掛軸の掛緒に引っ掛ける。
- 10. 自在などのフックに掛緒を掛ける (Fig. 9)。
- 11. 両手で軸首を持ち、裂や本紙の画面を確認しなが ら、壁に沿うようにまっすぐ掛軸を開く(Fig. 10)。



Fig. 6 Lecture 講義

- Hook the hanging cord on a jizai hook on the wall (Fig. 9).
- 11. Hold both ends of the roller rod with your both hands, open the hanging scroll on the wall slowly, checking the surface of the artwork and the mounting fabric for any damage (Fig. 10).
- 12. Arrange the hanging scroll nicely and move away quietly.



Fig. 7 Undo the cloth the hanging scroll 包みを開く



Fig. 8 Untie the wrapping cord 巻緒を解く



Fig. 9 Hook the hanging cord on a *jizai* hook 自在に掛緒を掛ける



Fig. 10 Open the hanging scroll with both hands 両手で掛軸を開く

■ Closing a hanging scroll

The edges of a Japanese hanging scroll are folded back (*mimiori*). Due to that, air space is created between the back side of a hanging scroll and the artwork surface when it is rolled up. So, even if the hanging scroll is rolled up tightly when looked it from the side, the inner side is loose. Do not tie the wrapping cord so tightly that the inner side of the hanging scroll will become tight. Sometimes there are some creases running vertically in the middle of a hanging scroll. This could be caused if the wrapping cord was tied too tightly or if someone held it tightly.

- Roll the hanging scroll up with both hands aligning both ends.
- 2. Roll up until where the painting disappears and take the hanging cord off the *jizai* hook using a *yahazu* stick.
- Fold both the decorative fabric strips in. The decorative fabric strip on the right comes on top.
- 4. Put the *himoshita* back.
- 5. Wrap the cord 3 times around the hanging scroll and tie it.

■ 掛軸をしまう

日本の掛軸は両端が折り曲げらえて 2 重になっています (耳折)。それによって、掛軸を巻くと掛軸の裏と本紙の間に僅かな空間が出来ます。つまり、断面から見てきちんと巻いてあっても、内側は柔らかい状態です。したがって、巻紐を巻くときも、内側まで絞まる程にきつく結んではいけません。実際に、掛軸で縦に皺が連なって傷んでいる作品は、強く握りすぎたり、紐で締めすぎたりしたことが原因と考えられます。

- 1. 小口を揃えながら両手で少しずつ巻き上げる。
- 2. 絵が隠れるところまで巻き、矢筈に掛緒を引っ掛けて掛軸を外す。
- 3. 右側の風帯を左側の上に乗せて、風帯を収める。
- 4. 紐下をつける。
- 5. 巻緒を掛軸の周りを3周させて結ぶ。



Fig. 11 Practical work 実習

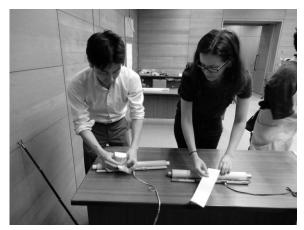


Fig. 12 Practical work 実習

3.2 Handling folding screens

Structure of folding screens

A folding screen is made by applying layers of paper on a wooden lattice core (Fig. 13, Fig. 14, Fig. 15). Eight layers of paper are pasted on each side to compose the panel (Table 1). Layering the paper that has long fibers several times provides the light but tough structure. The frame attached around the panel is called osoigi (Fig. 16). In many cases, they are coated with urushi. There are various colors of urushi, such as red and black. Additionally, they differ in shape as well, such as having sharp corners or rounded corners. The color and shape differ depending on the artworks. There are also several ways of attaching the frames. In Kyoto, the L-shaped nails called orekugi are used. In case nails are not used, the mortise and tenon joint may be used. The tenon is made on either the wooden lattice core or the frame and the mortise is made on the other, so that the frame can be attached by inserting the tenon into the mortise. In some cases, metal fittings might be attached on the corner of the frame.

Again, it is better to take off the metal things that you wear when handling the screens because they can potentially damage the urushi coating and metal fittings.

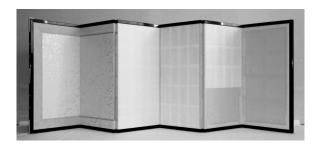


Fig. 13 Structure sample of a folding screen (front) 屏風の構造見本 (表)

3.2 屏風の取り扱い

■ 屏風の構造

屏風は木を組んだ下地に和紙を貼って作られます (Fig. 13、Fig. 14、Fig. 15)。片面に8層の和紙を貼り重ねてパネルが構成されています (表 1)。繊維の長い和紙を何層も重ねていることで、丈夫でありながら軽い構造となります。パネルの周囲に取り付けられている枠を襲木 (おそいぎ)といい、漆塗りの部材が取り付けられることが多いです (Fig. 16)。赤や黒といった漆の色、角が丸みを帯びたものや角ばったものなど形も様々あり、作品によって異なります。襲木の取り付け方にもいくつか方法があり、京都では折釘というL字の釘を使用します。折釘を使わない場合は、下地もしくは襲木側に凸状の部材を設け、もう一方を凹状に加工しておき、差し込んで取付ける方法もあります。襲木の角などに金物をつけることもあります。

漆や金物を傷つける恐れがあるため、屏風の取り扱う際もアクセサリーなど金属製品は外しておいた方が良いです。

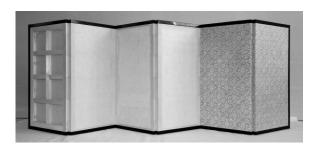


Fig. 14 Structure sample of a folding screen (back) 屏風の構造見本 (裏)

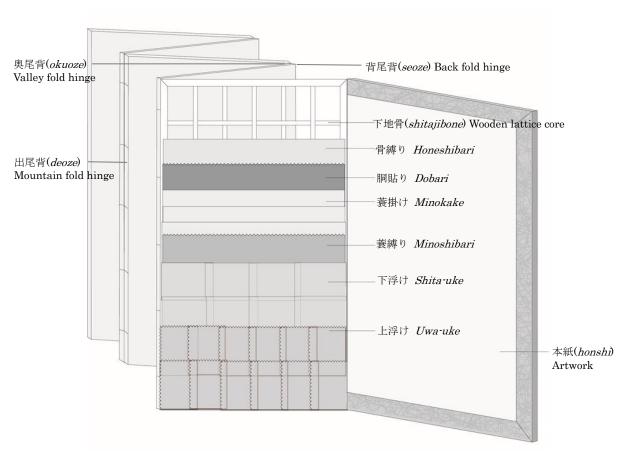


Fig. 15 Structure of a folding screen 屛風の構造

Table 1 Underlaying of folding screens

Type	Purpose	Paper
Honeshibari	To paste paper to the framework with a strong paste so that it will not become distorted.	Sekishu paper (kozo paper)
Dobari	To cover the entire framework with <i>maniai</i> paper, into which different kinds of clay have been mixed, in order to absorb resin from the framework and prevent it from affecting the <i>honshi</i> and avoid the wooden lattice cores from being seen through the underlaying layers by light.	In the past, Najio paper (mitsumata, kozo and clay) was used. Recently, Kochi paper (kozo and calcium carbonate) is more commonly used for the conservation of cultural properties.
Minokake (Sanmaimino)	To provide flexibility to <i>shitabari</i> by pasting strips of paper in layers. Paste is applied only to the four sides and the vertical beams of the framework. Strips of paper that are about 30 cm wide are applied in layers, with a third of the strip overlapping the one before.	<i>Sekishu</i> paper (<i>kozo</i> paper)
Minoshibari	To paste paper on the entire surface in order to cover the	Sekishu paper (kozo paper)

	steps produced with <i>minogake</i> and to flatten the entire	
	surface.	
Shita-uke	To paste paper by applying paste only to the four edges	Sekishu paper (kozo paper)
	of the paper while slightly overlaying on previous paper	
	and leaving the center portion unpasted. By doing this,	
	it becomes possible to buffer the tension caused by the	
	difference in the shrinkage of the framework and <i>honshi</i> .	
Uwa-uke	To paste paper in the same way as with <i>shita-uke</i> and for	Sekishu paper (kozo paper)
	the same purpose. However, because two edges of the	
	paper are intentionally unraveled, it is possible to avoid	
	differences in the surface level of the sheets of paper and	
	prevent the unevenness from being seen after applying	
	the artwork.	

表 1 屏風の下張り

種類	目的	使用する紙
骨縛り	下地骨の歪みや緩みを抑えるため、框と組子に濃いめ	石州紙 (楮紙)
	の糊をつけ強靭な紙を全面に貼る。	
胴貼り	下地より出る木の脂を吸収し、差し込む光が透けるの	昔は名塩紙(胴貼間似合紙)(三椏・
	を防ぐために泥土が混入された間似合紙を貼る。	楮・泥土) が用いられていたが、近年
		は文化財修理用に高知製(胴貼間似
		合紙)(楮・白土(炭酸カルシウム))
		を用いる。
箕掛け(3枚養)	框と縦の組子の上だけに糊を付け、幅 30 cm ほどの細	石州紙(楮紙)
	長い紙を3分の1ずつずらし、段々に重ねて貼ること	
	により、下貼りに弾力性と空気層を持たせる。	
箕縛り	箕掛けで段々になったものの上に1層全面に貼る事で	石州紙 (楮紙)
	平らな1枚の面にする。	
下浮け	袋貼りの別称の通り、小判の紙の周囲のみに糊付けし	石州紙 (楮紙)
	た紙を一定幅ずらして重ね貼ることで袋状に浮かせ、	
	下地と本紙の伸縮の差による応力を緩和する働きがあ	
	る。	
上浮け	下浮けと同様の働きで、貼り方も同じであるが、2方	石州紙(楮紙)
	を喰い裂きとすることで下浮けのような棒継ぎの段差	
	が出ないため、本紙側から見えない状態となる。	

Handling folding screens

The most unique characteristic and the physically weakest part of a folding screen is its hinges. Each panel of a screen joined by paper hinges can be moved in the reverse direction. All the hinges are made of paper only. One hinge consists of three layers of washi. Though the panels are attached firmly with the hinges, do not forget that they are made of paper. Since they are made of paper, once they have had a small tear, the tear can expand very quickly. The important thing when you handle folding screens is not to put weight onto the hinges. The weight of a folding screen goes to the hinges most it is standing, especially if it is held at an angle. In this situation, the paper hinges could tear due to the pressure of each panel sliding in different directions vertically.

When we handle an actual folding screen, we have two people lift it because it is heavy. Also, before handling a folding screen, ensure the lacquer frames are attached firmly to the panels; otherwise, some of them might come off.

- 1. Open the box.
- 2. Take out the bag containing the folding screen from the box.
- 3. Take out the folding screen from the bag.
- 4. One person holds the bottom of the screen, while the other person lifts up the top of the screen so that the screen can stands on its own (Fig. 17, Fig. 18).
- Open the screen from the inside panels to the outside panels. Two people should do this simultaneously.
- Q: Are there storage boxes for folding screens?
- A: Yes, there are. Traditionally, a folding screen is placed in a cotton bag and then stored in a box. There are several styles. One style would be storing the screen laid down so that the frame is on the top side. Another style might be

■ 屏風を開く

屏風の最大の特徴で、最も弱いところ、それは蝶番の部分です。屏風は、蝶番によって繋がれており、各パネルが逆方向にも曲がる構造になっています。蝶番は和紙が3重程度に貼り合わされていますが、しっかり繋がっているからといって、紙であることを忘れてはいけません。紙なので、一度切れたりすると、そこから痛みが瞬く間に進行していきます。したがって、取り扱うときにこの屏風の重さが蝶番にかかるような扱いをしてはいけません。屛風の重さが最も蝶番にかかる状態というのが、本体を立てるときなどで、斜めにして扱うことです。各パネルが上下別々にスライドすると、蝶番に負担がかかり切れます。

本物の屏風は重いので、2人で取り扱いするようにしています。屏風によっては、襲木が外れることもありますので、まずはパーツがしっかりくっついていることを確認してから、取り扱うようにしてください。

- 1. 箱を開く。
- 2. 箱から屏風を袋ごと取り出す。
- 3. 袋から屏風を取り出す。
- 4. 下側の人が押さえ、上部側の人が持ち上げて屛風 を立てる (Fig. 17、Fig. 18)。
- 5. 2人同時に内側から順番に開く。

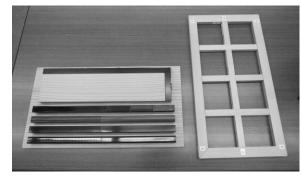


Fig. 16 Frames and wooden lattice core 襲木と下地骨

- Q: 屏風用の保存箱などはありますか?
- A: あります。伝統的には綿の袋に入れて箱に収納します。襲木を上にして横に倒した状態で収納する スタイルのものと、立てた状態で底に設置したスライダーに乗せて滑らせて収納するものなどが あります。ただし、最近の美術館や博物館では屏

standing the screen upright on a roll-out rail constructed on the floor so that the screen can be pulled out. Recently, there has been an increase in the number of museums and art galleries that store folding screens by standing them perpendicular to the floor without boxes. However, when we restore the screens owned by temples, not museums, the storage boxes might be required and they are still made now.

風の箱は用いず、床に対して垂直に立てて保存されることが多くなっています。博物館ではなくお 寺などが所有する作品を修復した際には、現在で も箱をつくることもあります。



Fig. 17 Hold the folding screen with both hands 両手で屛風を持つ



Fig. 19 Lecture 講義



Translated by GOTO Rika



Fig. 18 Open the screen from the inside panels 内側から順番に開く



Fig. 20 Lecture 講義

IV	Study Tour

1 Schedule

スタディツアー日程

Date	Time	Subjects	
Mon. 16 th Sep.	AM 午前	東京→名古屋 Tokyo → Nagoya	
	PM 午後	Nagoya Castel 名古屋城	
Tue. 17 th Sep	AM 午前	Kami no Ondo (paper shop), Atsuta Shrine 紙の温度、熱田神宮	
	PM 午後	Minotakekami Kobo (traditional papermaking studio) 美濃竹紙工房	
Wed. 18 th Sep.	AM 午前	Mino Washi Museum 美濃和紙の里会館	
	PM 午後	Former Imai Residence and Mino Archive 旧今井家住宅・美濃史料館	
Thur. 18 th Sep.	AM 午前	Mizokawa Shoten (material and tool shop) 溝川商店	
	PM 午後	Kanetaka Hamonorouho (knife shop), Oka Bokkodo (traditional restoration studio) 金高刃物老舗、岡墨光堂	

2 Visiting Places 訪問先

■ Nagoya

In Nagoya, the participants visited the Nagoya Castle, which is designated a National Historic Site (Fig. 1, Fig. 2), a paper shop (Kami no Ondo: Fig. 3) and Atsuta Shrine (Fig. 4). The tour of the Hommaru Palace helped them to understand how paper cultural properties such as folding screens and sliding doors are arranged and used in historical buildings.

■ 名古屋

名古屋では、国の特別史跡である名古屋城と忠実に復元された本丸御殿 (Fig. 1、Fig. 2)、手すき和紙を多く取り扱う小売店 (紙の温度:Fig. 3)、社寺 (熱田神宮: Fig. 4)を訪問しました。歴史的建造物の室内において屏風や襖等の紙の文化財がどのように配置され、使用されていたかを学びました。



Fig. 1 Nagoya Castle Hommaru Palace 名古屋城本丸御殿



Fig. 2 The reception hall 名古屋城本丸御殿対面所上段之間



Fig. 3 Kami no Ondo (paper shop) 紙小売店(紙の温度)



Fig. 4 Atsuta Shrine 熱田神宮

■ Mino

Hon-minoshi, which is designated as an Important Intangible Cultural Property of Japan and also a UNESCO Intangible Cultural Heritage, is made at the Mino City in Gifu Prefecture. The participants visited one of the papermaking workshops, Minotakekami Kobo, and learned the traditional papermaking process (Fig. 5, Fig. 6). At the Mino Washi Museum, they learned the history of minogami and the tools for making of minogami, and had an experience of papermaking (Fig. 7, Fig. 8). After that, they visited the important preservation district of historic buildings of Mino city. Through the visit of the Former Imai Residence and Mino Archives where was a dealer of paper and learned the history that papermaking had supported the local economy and the commercial distribution of washi (Fig. 9, Fig. 10).



Fig. 5 Demonstration (Minotakekami Kobo) 実演(美濃竹紙工房)



Fig. 7 The exhibition of Mino Washi Museum 展示見学(美濃和紙の里会館)

■美濃

国の重要無形文化財およびユネスコ世界無形文化遺産である本美濃紙の生産地の岐阜県美濃市では、手漉き和紙工房の1つである美濃竹紙工房を訪問し、伝統的な和紙の製造工程を学びました(Fig. 5、Fig. 6)。美濃和紙の里会館では、美濃和紙の歴史や製造工程、紙すきに使う道具などに関する展示を見学し、実際に和紙を漉く体験をしました(Fig. 7、Fig. 8)。また、うだつの上がる町並みとして有名な美濃市美濃町重要伝統的建造物群保存地区において、かつて紙問屋であった旧今井家住宅・美濃史料館を見学し、和紙づくりが地域経済を支えた歴史、和紙の流通などを学びました(Fig.9、Fig. 10)。



Fig. 6 Explanation of paper (Minotakekami Kobo) 紙の説明(美濃竹紙工房)



Fig. 8 Experience of papermaking 紙漉き体験



Fig. 9 Historical district at Mino town 美濃町の歴史的地区



Fig. 10 The Former Imai Residence and Mino Archives 旧今井家住宅・美濃史料館

■ Kyoto

The participants visited Oka Bokkodo (Fig. 11, Fig. 12) which is one of the studios belonging the certified group holding the Selected Conservation Techniques on "Restoration techniques for mounts," and a material and tool shop (Mizokawa shoten: Fig. 13, Fig. 14) and knife workshop (Kanetaka Hamonorouho: Fig. 15, Fig. 16). From these visits, they learned the mounting culture in Kyoto and the situation surrounding the traditional conservation culture that there are shops and workshops which are related to the conservation, and conservation of cultural properties are supported by those related industries in the region.

■京都

京都では、国の選定保存技術「装潢修理技術」の保持 団体である紙文化財修復工房の1つである岡墨光堂 (Fig. 11、Fig. 12)、および装潢修理技術に必要な道具・ 材料の店(溝川商店: Fig. 13、Fig. 14) や、工房(金高 刃物老舗: Fig. 15、Fig. 16)を訪問し、装潢修理技術の 元となった京都における表具文化、また、地域に道具工 房・店、材料店などの関連業種があり、地域が一体とし て文化財の保存修復を行っているという装潢修理を取 り巻く環境について学びました。



Fig. 11 Explanation at the conservation studio 修復工房における説明



Fig. 12 Visiting the conservation studio (Oka Bokkodo) 修復工房の見学 (岡墨光堂)



Fig. 13 Visiting the material shop (Mizokawa shoten) 修復材料問屋の見学(溝川商店)



Fig. 14 Various paper for conservation 修復用の様々な紙



Fig. 15 Visiting the knife workshop (Kanetaka Hamonorouho)
刃物工房の見学



Fig. 16 Demonstration of making a knife 刃物作りの実演

		_ v	Summary

1 Discussion

ディスカッション

The Association for Conservation of National Treasures

TAKASE Atsuko, OGASAWARA Atsushi

ICCROM

José Luiz PEDERSOLI Jr.

Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties

KATO Masato

KATO

First, if there are any questions throughout the course, we would try to answer them for you.

HILL

It is with regard to the preparation of wheat starch paste. As you know, we, in Western conservation, prepare it very differently. From your perspective, do you have concerns about what we are doing with paste preparation and reversibility or re-treatability of Western papers?

KATO

Well, first, when you heat the starch and make paste, the starch gelatinization happens. However, it is very difficult to make the starch gelatinized completely. What we are doing at conservation studios in Japan is the way to get a fairly good result, but, even in their studios, they sometimes have a paste that is not perfect. That is how difficult the paste making is. In our research, we found out that industrial pastes are the best in the sense of starch gelatinization. But those commercially available pastes contain preservatives. So, we cannot use them in the conservation.

Regarding the European way of paste making, I do not think it has completely become a paste. What negative impacts that have would be decrease in the adhesion; that is the most likely happen. But when I consider whether the restoration work that you do in Europe requires such strong adhesion or not; I think it may be 国宝修理装潢師連盟

高瀬亜津子、小笠原温

ICCROM

José Luiz PEDERSOLI Jr.

東京文化財研究所

加藤雅人

加藤

最初は全体通しての質問があれば、それをお受けしたい と思います。

HILL

小麦デンプン糊の準備についての質問です。ご存じのと おり、西洋では準備の仕方が大きく異なります。皆さん から見て、西洋での準備方法、それから洋紙に対しての 可逆性や再処置可能性などについて何か気になること はありますか?

加藤

そうですね。まず、デンプンを、火を通して糊にする時に糊化 (アルファ化)という現象が起こるのですが、完全に糊化させるのは、実はかなり難しいです。日本の工房の方法は、かなりいい状態で糊になる方法ですが、それでもたまにちゃんとできていないこともあります。それぐらい難しいものです。当研究所で調べたところ、一番ちゃんと糊ができている状態は、工業的に作った糊でした。ただ、そういう市販のものは、香料が入っていたりするため修復には使えません。

ヨーロッパの人の炊き方を見ていると、おそらくちゃんと糊になっていないと思います。それで何か悪いことがあるかというと、一番起こり得るのは接着力の低下です。ただヨーロッパのコンサベーションでそこまで強度が必要かというと、もしかしてそうではないのかもしれないと考えています。というのは、日本では大きな掛軸の全面に紙を貼るので力も必要ですし、全体の均一さも必要になってきます。ですが、例えば皆さんが普段扱う

not. Because in Japan, for example, we might have to apply the paste to a huge hanging scroll, so It needs to be strong, also needs to be homogenized. But if you are working on small objects, maybe it's not necessary.

ような小さいものには、もしかしたら必要ないかもしれません。

HOBBS

I am curious what ideas or practices do you all hope that we take back to our countries that we have heard here from last weeks.

KATO

The course that we run is for transferring conservation techniques. But the philosophy or way of thinking behind are also considered to be important. We wanted you to understand what ways of thinking that we, the Japanese, have behind the techniques. We wanted you to understand that there are ways of thinking and approaches that are different from those in Europe. This does not mean which one is better than the other.

Also, preparing the tools and organizing working space are one of those we would like you to have noticed and back to your countries. I suppose our staff said strictly; for example, the tabletop should be well organized, and the tools should be put back after using. As you may noticed, the studios in Japan are not very large. Unless you have everything organized and well arranged, accidents are likely to occur. That will lead to the safety of the cultural property, so it is important point. I think this is something that is common to both the West and Japan. So, we would like you to take that idea back with you.

From my field of specialty of paper, I would be grateful if you understand that there are many different types of paper. When I browse the websites of some companies which sell conservation materials overseas, it appears that there is not many good-quality washi. To be honest, I could not find anything that would be similar to what the conservators in Japan use. Probably, it is better not to use paper that is sold by

HOBBS

私たちがこの数週間で学んだことのうち、皆さんが私たちに持ち帰ってほしいと思う考え方や技術は何ですか。

加藤

我々がやっているコースは、技術移転のコースですが、 実はその背景にある哲学や考え方も重視しています。これは、どっちがいいという問題ではないのですが、日本にはこういう考え方があって、ヨーロッパの文化財保存の考え方とかやり方とは違うけれども、そういった考え方もあるということを、知っていただきたいというものがありました。

それから、うちのスタッフも結構厳しく言ったと思いますが、道具の整備やテーブルのオーガナイズなどは、実は学んでほしいことの一つですね。見ていただいて分かったと思いますが、日本の工房は狭いです。なので、ちゃんと準備してオーガナイズしておかないと、事故が起きてしまいます。つまりそれは、文化財の安全性に繋がりますので、そこは重要だと思います。こういったことは、多分、欧米でも日本でも共通することなので、ぜひ持ち帰っていただきたいと思います。

私の専門の紙でいうと、和紙っていろいろあるということを分かっていただけたらと思います。インターネットで、海外で修復材料を販売しているサイトを見たところ、なかなかいい和紙は売っていないな、という印象を持ちました。正直、日本の修復現場で使用されるような紙はほぼありませんでした。とあるサイトで売っている紙は、使わないほうがいいかもしれません。別のサイトは、いい紙から悪い紙までいろいろありました。ですので、調べる目がないと難しいと思います。ずっと使っていた良い紙が、ある日、だんだん違う物になっていくこともあるので、気を付けてください。

one of the websites. Another company has paper in various qualities from good quality to insufficient quality. Therefore, you also need to have a good eye to select the proper paper. You need to be careful because sometimes the good-quality paper that you have been using for a long time is gradually changing to different quality of paper.

HILL

An owner of a shop has deep relationships with a number of papermakers in Japan and has invited many of them to do demonstrations and to meet with conservators so that we have conversations about what do we look for in Japanese paper from a Western conservation perspective. Do they match between what a papermaker can make and wants to make, and what we think we need?

KATO

It is a difficult question of whether it is good or not good to have communication directly with papermakers. They are specialists in making paper, not a conservator. When we put in an order, they will try devising a better way of making paper to meet our order. But they do not have the knowledge to judge whether that is suitable for conservation or not. That is a difficult point. For example, they make paper white although it is not necessary from the point of view of conservation. Even in Japan, we feel it is very difficult problem.

There are papermakers who actively sell their paper in Europe. To be honest, some of the paper that they make, I feel, are not suitable for conservation. In any case, what is important is your knowledge and ability to select the proper paper.

GIOSTRELLA

About the quality of paper, so you do not have a certification like ISO (International Organization for Preservation) for your paper?

HILL

ある取扱店のオーナーは日本の紙漉き職人さんと深い 関係を築いていて、彼らを招いてデモンストレーション をしてもらったり、西洋の保存修復においてどのような 和紙が望まれているかコンサバターと話す機会を設け たりしています。紙漉き職人さんが作れる、作りたいと 思う和紙と私たちが必要と思う和紙は合致するでしょ うか?

加藤

実は紙漉き職人さんと、直接に近い状態で会話するのがいいのか悪いのかっていうのは、難しいところです。紙漉き職人さんはコンサバターではなく紙を作る専門家なので、こちらがオーダーすると、彼らは自分たちで、いろんなことを工夫してくれます。ですがそれが、コンサベーションの観点から合っているかという知識はありません。そこがちょっと難しいところです。白くなくてもいいのに白くしてしまうことなどもあったりして、日本の中でもなかなか難しい問題だと感じています。積極的にヨーロッパに売り出している紙漉き職人さんもいますが、正直、コンサベーションに向かない紙もあります。いずれにしろ、皆さんの選ぶ目が重要になってくると思います。

GIOSTRELLA

紙の質についてですが、ISO (国際標準化機構) のような認証基準はないのですか。

KATO

No, we don't have. If we ask the papermakers not to make this kind of paper or that kind of paper, it can result in threatening the papermakers' life. We think that perhaps it is the best for the papermakers to understand the work of conservation. We are doing our best to relay the knowledge to the papermakers. We are making steady efforts.

PEDERSOLI

This course has been brought to Mexico in a way to meet East and West for Spanish-speaking conservators. I'd like to hear from you, the first organizers, what lessons have you learned by bringing this course to the Western reality, in terms of adaptations that you have seen or you have envisaged of techniques, materials and tools, because now I think the discussion here is about Japanese materials, tools, and techniques used outside Japan, in the Western conservation context.

KATO

Can we start this with talking about the concept? As the Institute, we try transferring information and techniques without thinking of adaptability to each country. Because the purpose of this course is to accurately relay the Japanese traditional way of doing things to the Western people. The reason why we do not think about adaptability is; as we can see here, this year, most of the participants are from the Western countries, but sometimes we have participants from Asia and other countries. In that case, there are things that can be adapted to an artwork of one participant's country, but not to another artwork of another participant's country. If we start thinking about adaptability when we have participants from many different countries, it is very difficult to be consistent what we should relay to the participants.

We also however, at our Center, support conservation

加藤

ありません。こんな紙作っては駄目と言ってしまうと、 紙漉き職人さんの生活を、首を絞めることになってしま いますので。我々としては、紙漉き職人さんにも、コン サベーションとはどういうものかっていうのを知って いただくような活動をするのが一番かなと思って、今、 地道に話をしているところではあります。そういう要望 があるので、考えようという努力をしています。

PEDERSOLI

このコースはメキシコでもやっています。スペイン語圏のコンサバターに向けて、東洋と西洋の出会いをテーマにしています。まずは主催者側にお聞きしたいのですが、西洋の方々にこのようなコースを行うことで、得たもの、学んだことは何でしょうか?特に、皆さんが見たあるいは想像する日本の技術、材料、道具などの応用について、聞かせていただきたいと思います。というのも、ここでの議論は、西洋の保存修復の文脈において日本国外で使用されている日本の材料、道具、技術についてであると思うからです。

加藤

一方で、われわれのセンターでは、1 カ国やある地域に 対する支援も行っています。そのようなときには応用に ついて話すこともできます。

それを踏まえた上で、講師のお二方、特に小笠原さんは メキシコにも行かれているので、皆さんの仕事を見てど う思われたか、どんなことが提案できそうかコメントを for one area of the world or one country. In those cases, いただけますか? we can think about adaptability.

So, with that in mind, I would like to ask you two, especially Mr. OGASAWARA because he has been to Mexico too, what you think about everybody's work and what you can suggest.

OGASAWARA

For example, it might be cutting paper in a straight line. I think, especially, the water-cut method is the way of cutting that is properly attuned to the Japanese paper, in order to reduce the gap when you join the pieces of paper. I think it is up to you to decide whether you can use these techniques or not in your work.

I also think the concentration of the paste is something that is difficult to learn through books or images, but you can learn from experience. If you were able to learn those fundamental techniques, I would be very happy.

KATO

In the course in Mexico, the first half of the course is conducted by the Japanese team, and the second half is conducted by the Spanish-speaking team from Mexico and Spain. The first half is, more initial, just the entrance part, compared with the course that you have had. For example, you made a handscroll, but they won't do it in Mexico. They will do making paste, cutting paper straight, making the feathered edge and applying linings.

In the second part, the former participants of this course are the instructors. They share the information how they have been able to use what they learned from this course in their conservation work. Mr. OGASAWARA attended that second half. What do you think about their adaptation?

OGASAWARA

For example, I think maybe some of you know it, but I 例えば、糊を作るときには、皆さんの中にもご存じの方 saw how they use the microwave oven to make a small がいると思いますが、電子レンジで少量の糊を作るとい

小笠原

例えば、紙を真っすぐ、直線に断つとか、特に、喰い裂 きは、紙を繋ぐ際に段差をなだらかにするためなどに和 紙に対して有効な紙を切る方法だと思います。皆さんが 扱う仕事の中で、その技術が有効であるかどうかは、皆 さんに判断していただくことになると思います。

あと例えば、写真とか本では分からないこととして、糊 の濃度という感覚的なところは、実際に皆さんと一緒に 作業して、少し理解してもらえたことかと思います。そ ういった、基本的な技術を学んでいただけたら、とても うれしく思います。

加藤

メキシコのコースは、前半は日本チームが、後半はメキ シコとスペインのスペイン語チームが担当しています。 前半は、このコースの入り口だけをやっています。例え ば、皆さんには巻子を作ってもらいましたが、巻子は作 らずに、糊を炊くとか、真っすぐ切るとか、喰い裂きを 作るとか、裏打ちしてみるとかっていうことをします。 後半の部分では、このコースの卒業生が講師をしていま す。なので、このコースを受けた人たちが、その技術を 自分たちの国に持って帰って、こんなことができたとい うのを共有します。小笠原さんはその後半も受けていま すが、そうした応用を見てどう思われましたか?

小笠原

amount of paste.

う方法を見ました。

KATO

Has anybody done that?

[5 participants: BLAT BURGUES, GIOSTRELLA, HOBBS, HUGHES AND NELIGAN, Raised their hand.

OGASAWARA

We did not know about this microwave method because, for us, the amount of the paste that we make usually is about the same amount that you made in this course. Dr. KATO has talked a little bit about the quality of the paste earlier. I personally think, the paste made with the microwave is possibly acceptable, if you have a clear purpose, for instance, if you're using it for pasting a fragment of the artwork temporally. So, using what kind of paste for what purpose is your choice, and that is an adaptability, I think.

KATO

How do you think Ms. TAKASE? Do you have any comments throughout the course, or something that comes in sight regarding adaptability in other countries?

TAKASE

Of course, there are some mounters (in general) who use tables like these to work on, but we normally work on tatami or floor. So, there are some risks, for example, with the bucket being too close to us or people passing behind us. You may be surprised that how small a space we work in. As we usually do not work at a high position, I think, perhaps it was difficult to work on such higher tables during the course.

KATO

Has anyone tried to use the lower table here? I 今回、低い作業台の方でやってみた人はいますか?

加藤

やったことがある人はいますか?

[BLAT BURGUES, GIOSTRELLA, HOBBS, HUGHES, NELIGAN の 5 人から手があがる】

小笠原

私たちは、この研修で最初に作ったような量を作るのが 当たり前で、電子レンジの方法を知りませんでした。先 ほど加藤さんも糊の出来の話を少ししていましたが、僕 としては、その電子レンジで作る糊も、作品の断片を仮 に留める程度というような使用目的がはっきりしてい れば、それはそれでありだなと思いました。ですから、 その辺は応用として、どういう糊をどういう場面で使う かということも、それぞれの立場によって使い分ければ いいと思います。

加藤

高瀬さん、どうですか?感想も含めて、皆さんの中での 応用など、何か見えてくることはありませんか?

高瀬

日本の(一般的な)表具屋さんの中でもこういう高い作 業台を使う所もありますが、私たちはいつも畳で、床で 作業しています。それもあって、例えば、バケツがすご い足元の近くに置いてあったり、すぐ後ろを人が通った りと、そういうところで危険性があります。おそらく皆 さんがびっくりするほど狭い所で作業しています。自分 たちは普段、あまり高い所で作業しないので、逆に今回 の研修で、高い所での作業は難しかったと思います。

加藤

suppose, Mr. SOTIRAS has experience of both SOTIRAS さんは両方とも経験があると思いますが、い

methods, the high position and the low position. How かがでしたか? did you feel?

SOTIRAS

It was hard for me to cut paper on the higher table, because I'm used to do lower; especially with a marubocho, it is easier in lower position. For short ones, it's okay. But when we joined, then we had to cut the long one.

KATO

I think probably, even in your country, if you are working on something which is quite large or very long, like he said, a lower table may make your work easier.

TAKASE

When an artwork is bigger than the working table, we would work on the floor directly. If the artwork is larger than the *karibari* panel, we may use the floor as substitute for the karibari panel. When we do that, we have a kind of a stand putting over the artwork so that we can work on it.

SOTIRAS

Just for the other participant, if you wish at some point maybe to use techniques like that, I think it could be nice to have a bench and with, like, the feet you can motivate the heights of it. When you do consolidation, etcetera, for me it's better to do on a high bench or not extending steady on my knees not moving because sometimes when you're doing consolidation that is more likely to happen, so you're definitely going to spend the day on your knees. When you are lining, you are a bit more mobile. So, you do either on your feet or-so I think something that can be moved like up and down easily and resistant enough to have someone on the table as well.

SOTIRAS

私は低い作業台で紙を切るのに慣れているので、高い作 業台でやるのは難しかったです。特に丸包丁で切るとき は低い作業台がよいと思います。短いものはまだよいで すが、継いで長くなったものを切るのが特に難しかった です。

加藤

もしかしたら皆さんの国でも大きな物を扱うとか、さっ き彼が言ったみたいに、長い物を扱うときには、低いテ ーブルのほうが作業しやすいかもしれません。

高瀬

作業台よりも大きな物のときは、床で作業しています。 仮張りよりも大きければ、床に張り込んだりもします。 床に大きい物を張り込んでいるときは、乗り板を渡して 作業したりしています。

SOTIRAS

これはほかの研修生に対してですが、このような技術を 使用したいとなったときには、脚の高さを調節できる作 業台があるといいかもしれません。剥落止めなどの作業 をするときは、高い作業台を使う方が私はやりやすいで す。正座をして(脚を伸ばせないままで)仕事をするこ とは結構大変なので。剥落止めなどはよくある作業です し、一日中正座で過ごさないといけなくなります。逆に、 裏打ちをするときは、もう少し動きやすい方がいいで す。なので、どちらもできるように、簡単に上下の調節 ができて、人が上に乗っても十分耐久性のあるような台 だとよいと思います。

PEDERSOLI

I visited a workshop, where a colleague from Brazil who took the course in Mexico works. They were very inspired by the tools and their function, but for some of them, they did not have the resource to buy it to import. What they did, they made their own with locally-available materials. It is probably not the same quality but they are very happy because now they have tools to do specific tasks that they were not aware of before. But I think it's inspirational, especially if you are in a context, where it's difficult to import or the resources are not readily available. So, it's part of の一つじゃないかなと思います。 the adaptation I asked about.

KATO

Relating to his comments, I have a question for you. Do you use *karibari* panels, everyone?

[Everyone nods.]

Do you think it is really necessary? I think recently people who use a karibari panel in fashion are increasing. This method is very essential for us because it's very suitable for Japanese works of art. But if you apply this method to modern paper or Western paper, you will be probably faced with various problems. For example, I have heard of person who uses a karibari panel for drying a big poster, and the poster was torn.

When you hear the word "karibari", I supposed many of you imagine a karibari panel like this. But in some cases, we may dry an artwork on a wooden board or even do it on the floor as Ms. TAKASE said. So, karibari does not always mean drying on that kind of karibari panel. There are some people who ask how to make the karibari panel, but I am wondering if it is really necessary to make it?

HILL

Well, making karibari panel is challenging and fun. So, what I love about the course we have just finished and East meets West, West meets East, is the way we

PEDERSOLI

メキシコのコースを取ったブラジル人のスタジオを訪 ねたことがあるのですが、彼らはコースで使われていた 道具とその機能に感銘を受けたものの、いくつかの道具 は輸入して購入する術がありませんでした。そこで、ど うしたかというと、地元で入手できる材料で自作しまし た。もちろん、同じ品質ではないでしょうが、それを使 うことによって、以前は難しかった作業ができるように なったと非常に満足しています。こうした事例は、輸入 が困難な状況や材料がなかなか入手できないといった ときに、とても励みになることだと思いますし、応用性

加藤

今の発言に関連して伺いたいのですが、皆さん仮張りは 使いますか?

【皆がうなずく】

本当に必要ですか?最近、ファッションでやっている方 が増えている気がしています。仮張りは、日本の作品に は非常に適しているので、我々にとっては絶対必要なも のです。

しかし、これをそのままモダンペーパーや洋紙に行う と、おそらく、いろんなトラブルが起きると思います。 実際、大きなポスターを張り込んで、割れてしまったと いう人の話を聞いたことあります。

例えば、皆さん、こういう仮張り板を思い浮かべるとい う方が多いと思いますが、場合によっては、板に張り込 むこともありますし、先ほど高瀬さんがおっしゃったよ うに、床に張り込むときもあって、あのような板に張り 込むことが仮張りでは必ずしもありません。仮張り板の 作り方を教えてほしいといわれる方が多いのですが、本 当にあの板を作る必要があるのかと思うこともありま す。

HILL

そうですね、仮張り板を作ることはやりがいがあって楽 しいことと思います。このコースいいところは、私たち (西洋) が東洋と邂逅し、東洋も西洋と出会うことで応 are able to adapt. In my lab at Queens University, we have been using the *karibari* panel not in a traditional sense. We have been doing it more for Western poster paper, but friction mounting. We have also used it with incredible success for a pastel painting from 1873 from Paris, and basically just did edge lining but kept it on the board. What I like about the *karibari* panel is that it is portable. I have a lot of students in my lab. We can help something drying and then, move it somewhere else. We might not need to use the *karibari* panel but it is very effective for many reasons.

KATO

That's true. As you talked about portability, it could be one of the reasons why we use it in Japan; because it is very suitable for a small studio. On a side note, in China, they dry artworks on the wall, not on a panel. Perhaps, the Chinese method that applying and drying on the wall was brought to Japan and then, was modified to applying on a *karibari* panel because there is no wall.

BORYSENKO

We use board; just simple board, not *karibari*. But where necessary at the moment, to avoid cracks on the works, we must keep the board not on the ground or room where temperature changes. It protects the work. Also, if the paper is not so thin and it can make cracks, you know. So, we press a little bit. We press it when it worked. Then we put it, like, a simple wall or board.

NELIGAN

We have used the *karibari* panel as well but what Kato-san is saying about being wary of the cracks, I think whenever we use it, we have been very conscious about how strong it is. When you're doing this tension drying, that is something, I think, in the West originally were not that aware of how—when you're

用を可能にすることだと思います。私のいるクイーンズ 大学の修復室では、仮張り板を伝統的な意味とは少し異なる形で使用しています。フリクション・マウンティングという西洋ポスターなどにより適した方法で使っています。1873年のパリのパステル画に対して、縁にだけ裏打ちを行い板に張り込んでとても成功した事例もあります。仮張り板の何がいいかというと、移動できるということだと思います。修復室には学生が大勢いるので、作品などを乾かしている間、その板ごとどこか別の場所へ移動させられるのはとても使い勝手が良いです。仮張り板を必ずしも使用する必要はないとは思いますが、様々な理由からとても効果的だと思います。

加藤

おっしゃるとおりですね。移動できるというコメントがありましたが、日本では狭い工房で作業しているということも、使用されている理由だと思います。1つ付け加えておくと、中国では、板じゃなくて壁に張り込みます。もともと中国で壁に張り込む方法が日本に入ってきて、壁がないのであのようなパネルに張り込んだっていうことだと思います。

BORYSENKO

私たちは仮張り板ではなく普通の板を使っています。現 時点で必要なのは、作品のひび割れを防ぐために、板を 地面(床)や温度変化が生じる部屋に置かないようにす ることです。知っての通り、紙がそれほど薄くなく、ひ び割れが起きる可能性がある場合には、プレスが有効な ら少しプレスをして、それから普通の壁や板に張り込ん でいます。

NELIGAN

アイルランドでも仮張り板を使用していますが、加藤さんがひび割れに気をつけてと言っている通り、使うたびにその引っ張りの強さを意識しています。このテンションをかけた乾燥方法を行っているとき、張り込んだときの、平らに引っ張る力が実際にどれほど強いものか、西洋では当初気づいていなかったと思います。洋紙に対し

putting it up, how strong that actually is as it pulls it flat. It is not something we do regularly because I think for the Western paper; usually your lining is when it's something that's very weak. To use it as a drying for such artworks, it is actually a very strong and powerful way of flattening.

てということを考えているので、それほど頻繁に行うことではありません。通常、裏打ちは非常に弱っているものに対して行います。そういった作品の乾燥に使用するには、非常に強力で影響の大きいフラットニング方法です。

SOTIRAS

It is not related to the *karibari* but more like adaptation what Mr. PEDERSOLI was saying about, making the tools. What I've get from the visit that like the materials for the paper is going to be more and more complicated to get pretty good quality. And the same for the tools because there are less people, who are making them.

What is your point of view about things that are made in the West? I am thinking, for example, about two papermakers in Europe. There is Gangolf in Berlin. There is a French guy making Japanese paper in the South of France, because we have a lot of *kozo* in the South of France. It was brought in the 19th century. I think the idea of what you said is that for conservators to meet those people and to tell them their need in terms of conservation, but would you encourage people to learn how to make tools and papers and to have them onsite? Would that be a possibility to have people in the Western countries, like in Eastern countries as well, that are able to do tools in a similar way or like similar quality as well maybe?

KATO

Well, I have met the person in Berlin, Gangolf ULBRICHT, several times. His background is paper science, so we have similar backgrounds and talked to each other. He imports *kozo* from Japan and makes *kozo* paper in Berlin. It is very thin, and called Berlin tissue. He understands conservation in Europe better, so perhaps he might be good at making *kozo* paper that is more suitable for the European conservation. I think it is easy for you to communicate with him in

SOTIRAS

仮張りの話ではなく、PEDERSOLI さんが話していた応用の話、道具作りに関する話ですが、今回の訪問で紙の材料の入手、特に質の良いものの入手がますます困難になっているということを知りました。そして、これは道具についても同様で、作り手が減少しているために入手が難しいと。

そこで、西洋で作られているものについてどうお考えですか?例えば、ヨーロッパにいる2人の紙漉き職人についてです。ベルリンにはガンゴルフさんがいて、南フランスにも和紙を作っているフランス人がいます。南フランスには19世紀にもたらされて以来楮が多くあります。先ほども話にあったように、そういった職人に会って修復の観点から必要性を伝えるだけでなく、現地で(日本国外で)道具や紙の作り方を学んでもらい、手に入れられるように働きかけるのはどうでしょうか?それによって、東洋の国々と同じように西洋の国々でも、(東洋と)似たような方法、あるいは同じような品質で道具を作れる人たちを確保することが可能になるのではないでしょうか?

加藤

そうですね。ベルリンのウルブリヒト・ガンゴルフさんなんかは、私も何度か会ったことがあります。彼はバックグラウンドが紙の科学なので、私と似ていたので話をしました。彼は、日本から楮を輸入し、ベルリンで楮の紙を漉いていて、ものすごく薄い、ベルリンティッシュという紙を作っています。やはり、彼のほうがヨーロッパのコンサベーションのことを分かっているので、もしかしたら、楮で、ヨーロッパに適した紙を作るのは、得意かもしれませんね。言語の問題だけじゃなくて、考え

terms of not just the language but also the basic way 方の点からも、話が通じやすいと思います。 of thinking.

KATO

just for your information about the adaptability of tools, you will take bamboo spatulas home with you this time, but I've heard that in Europe and in Central and South America, there is a possibility of getting bamboo materials in such as Chinese cooking equipment suppliers or one-coin shops and making your own tools from them. The noribon, paste tray, can be substituted for the special tray that is used to make the sushi rice. I remember seeing something like noribon was sold in Europe and Mexico. As sushi is now very popular all over the world, you might be able to get it. Like this, something used as cooking equipment might be able to substitute for conservation tools.

HILL

Just going back to the starch paste. When in a lecture, there was discussion about the optimal temperature that you would cook the paste to at, I think 92 °C. I am just thinking, if you were in the research lab, I'm thinking you're making a paste, how do you measure the temperature?

KATO

We do not measure the temperature in the studio. Making paste is one of the tasks done by the freshers and young conservators. They learn from trial and error and being admonished by senior conservators. In practice, it is possible to measure the temperature using non-contact thermometer like an infrared thermometer.

PEDERSOLI

Maybe you can also use a water bath or an oil bath, so you measure the temperature there, if you are not 熱板に置いたり火にかけたりしなければ温度を測るこ putting directly on the heating plate or a fire, or a とができます。挿し込める、金属の棒状のもの、より耐

加藤

道具の応用でいうと、これは情報ですが、今回皆さんに は竹べらを持って帰っていただきますが、ヨーロッパと か中南米などのワンコインショップや中華料理用の器 具などを売っているお店に竹の道具がたくさんあるの で、それを削って作ったという話をよく聞きます。糊盆 は、すし桶として売っているかもしれません。ヨーロッ パやメキシコで、これは糊盆そのものだと思った物が売 られているのを見たことがあります。今、全世界的にす しブームですので、入手できるかもしれません。こうし た料理系の物は、応用が利くかもしれません。

HILL

糊の話に戻りますが、講義で、糊を加熱するときに何度 までに上げるかという最適温度の話があったと思いま す。たしか92℃だったと思うのですが、実験室で、糊を 炊きながらどのように温度を測るのでしょうか?

加藤

工房では測ってないですね。糊は若い人たちの仕事です ので、作っては失敗して先輩に怒られながら学んでいき ます。実際の話でいうと、赤外線など非接触の温度計で 計ることはできます。

PEDERSOLI

湯煎や油浴などもできるのではないでしょうか。直接加

turbo fire, so it's also a metal rod that you can insert— 久性があるものもあります。 more resistant.

KATO

Water bath is not good. Oil bath may be possibly used to make a paste, but we have never done that. It's very important to heat up the whole thing evenly at once.

加藤

湯煎はダメですね。油浴は、もしかしたら作れるかもし れませんが、試してみたことはないです。糊も、できる だけ一気に全体を均一に加熱することが重要です。

HOBBS

Can I ask what you use to finish your wooden table for 作業台の表面は、何で仕上げていますか。 the surface?

HOBBS

KATO

In Japan, one side is always coated with urushi, and the other side is left without any coating. We use it depending on the cases when we want the surface to be water-repellent and to absorb water.

Other than this type of table, there's a board that is used when we apply the paste. It is the same—when we want to repel water, the one with urushi coating is used, and when we want to let absorb water, we use the non-coated one.

加藤

これは、日本だと片面が必ず漆で、片面は何も塗ってな いようになっており、水をはじきたい場合と、水を吸わ せたい場合とで使い分けています。

こうした作業台以外にも、糊を付けるための板というの があります。それも、水をはじきたいときは漆が塗って あるものを、水を吸わせたいときには白木とか、そうい うものを使います。

KATO

There is a question that I would like to ask you because we have been asked by the Agency for Cultural Affairs. I suppose recently the Korean government might be advocating using traditional Korean paper for conservation. Have you heard anything about this? In Italy, I think, there are some workshops or events related to it.

加藤

文化庁からも頼まれていて皆さんにお聞きしたいこと があります。最近、韓国の伝統的な紙を修復に使いまし ょうと、韓国が皆さんの国でアピールしているのではな いかと思うのですが、そのような話を聞いたことがあり ますか。イタリアは結構、ワークショップとかやってい ると思いますが。

GIOSTRELLA

Yes. Personally, I have never used it. Friends of mine are using it. But for Western paper, especially for photography.

One of them was in JPC in 2012, Barbara CATTANEO, is one of the first 150 to attend the workshop in Milano. Another friend of mine went to Korea, Alessandro Sidoti from the National Library of

GIOSTRELLA

そうですね。でも個人的には全く使用したことがありま せん。友人でその紙を使っている人はいますが、洋紙、 特に写真に対して使用しています。

そのうちの1人が JPC2012 の参加者であるバルバラ・ カッタネオさんで、ミラノでのワークショップに参加し た最初の150人の1人です。別の友人、フィレンツェ国 立図書館のアレッサンドロ・シドティさんは紙を漉きに were selected to go to Korea.

Florence, to make the paper. Just one of two of them 韓国まで行きました。韓国行きに選ばれたのはその2人 のうち1人だけでした。

SOTIRAS

There was a workshop two years ago. Was it like December 2016? Two weeks, organized in Korea.

BLAT BURGUES

I haven't used it but I know Italian colleagues. They were conservators from Vatican Museum. She was invited to this course and the workshops. She was very happy with this really.

GIOSTRELLA

It's relatively nice expense.

BLAT BURGUES

I think they were invited by the government.

KATO

There have been some political problems between Korea and Japan. So, you may think we are not on good terms with each other. But I personally would not deny Korean paper. Perhaps, it is the same with in the case of Japanese paper. If you have the ability to select the paper, you can use Korean paper too. I know many Korean conservators and we are on very good terms. There is a similar institute in Korea, and we have a good relationship. I also get information from them. I have heard of both scientific points of view and conservators' points of view.

The raw material, the tree, is extremely close to what we have in Japan. They say they use Broussonetia kazinoki. But they make paper in a unique way that is different from the way we do in Japan. From the point of view of technique, the Japanese paper has been developed in order to make paper thinly and evenly. It appears that the Korea does not aim at it so much. Even looking at the way the Korean paper is

SOTIRAS

2年前に韓国が運営した2週間のワークショップがあり ましたよね。2016年の12月だったかな?

BLAT BURGUES

私は使ったことないですが、その韓国の研修やワークシ ョップに招待され参加したバチカン美術館のコンサバ ターを知っています。彼女はとてもよかったと言ってい ました。

GIOSTRELLA

日本のよりも少し安価ですし。

BLAT BURGUES

政府の招待を受けて、ワークショップなどに参加してい ると思います。

加藤

最近、日本と韓国が政治的な対立があるので仲が悪いと 思っているかもしれませんが、韓国の紙を否定する気は ありません。日本の紙と同じで、選ぶ目があれば使える と思います。私は、韓国とも非常に仲良くしていて、韓 国のコンサバターにも知り合いが何人もいます。また、 韓国にも文化財研究所があり、当研究所と非常に交流が あるのですが、そこにも知り合いがいて情報をもらって います。ですので、科学的な話も、現場のコンサバター の話も聞いています。

原料となる木は、日本のものと非常に近いです。 Broussonetia kazinoki を使っていると、彼らは言って います。ただ、日本と違う独特な漉き方を韓国はします。 技術的な面でいうと、日本の紙は、薄く均一に漉くこと を目的として発展してきた紙の漉き方ですが、韓国は、 あまりそこは目指してないようです。作り方を見ていて も、あの方法では薄くて均一な紙はできません。なので、 厚くてもいい場合で安く買いたいときには、選択肢とし て入ってくるのではないかと思います。

実際に韓国の文化財、例えば掛軸や絵画を直している人

made, I think it is very difficult to have equally thin paper with that way. Thus, it would be a choice if thick paper is acceptable to use and you want to purchase less expensive paper.

I talked with the people who conserve Korean cultural properties such as hanging scrolls and paintings, and they said most of the paper they use are *washi*. Some people are now seeking for what they can use the Korean paper for. I think, it might be used for underlayers of the folding screens.

There's also Korean machine-made paper. I saw Korean machine-made paper that is sold as conservation grade in Europe, but that included paper that is clearly not for conservation. Those contain fluorescent whitening agents. Either it is Japanese paper or Korean paper, you have to be careful about additives; what is used in the paper making process. As I mentioned earlier, the raw material is the same. If they make it in the same way as ours, probably, they can get the same quality of paper as ours, I think.

NELIGAN

What about Chinese paper?

KATO

Since paper originated in China, there are many different types of paper. There are a lot of paintings in Japan traditionally, and there are paintings executed on the imported Chinese paper. So, there is a long history of importing Chinese paper to Japan. When we infill the losses on the paintings done on the Chinese paper, I suppose we may use Chinese paper still now. But an artist who has used Chinese paper for painting said that the quality of Chinese paper has decreased in the past 20 years or so. From the point of view of conservation, when we use Chinese paper, even it is the same name and same grade, we need to select the paper carefully.

に話を聞いたところでは、彼らが使っている紙のほとん どは和紙だと言っていました。今、韓国の紙を何に使え るか探しているようですが、私は、例えば屏風の下張り とかには使えるかもしれません。

関連するところでいうと、韓国の紙でも、機械漉きっていうのはあります。ただヨーロッパでコンサベーション用の韓国の機械漉きの紙として売っている物があったのですが、その中には明らかにコンサベーション用じゃない物が入っていました。蛍光増白剤が入っている物です。日本の紙にしろ、韓国の紙にしろ、そういった、何か添加物が入っているものに関しては気を付けてください。繰り返しになりますが、原料は同じなので、同じように作れば、多分、同じような品質だと思います。

NELIGAN

中国の紙はどうですか?

加藤

中国は、紙の発祥の地だけあって、すごくいろんな紙がたくさんあります。日本にも伝統的にたくさんの絵画がありますが、日本の絵画作品でもわざわざ中国から紙を輸入して描いたりしていた作品もあり、歴史的にずっと日本には中国の紙が来ています。そういった物の補修をするときに中国の紙を使うことは、今でもあると思います。ただ、ずっとそういう紙に描いている作家に聞くと、ここ 20 年ぐらいで中国の紙の質がずっと下がったと聞くので、同じ名前、同じグレードでも、コンサベーションに使うという点でいうと、やはりちゃんと選ばなきゃいけないと思います。

HUGHES

With the Japanese paper, with the *kozo*, the *mitsumata* and the *gampi*, if you have an artwork that is say on *gampi*, would that affect your choice of lining paper? Would you line *gampi* with *gampi* or *gampi* with *kozo*?

TAKASE

We use *kozo* paper for lining basically. We think that *kozo* paper is best for lining in terms of toughness and so on.

But for infilling, we use the same type of paper as honshi (artworks). However, there are some cases that the old gampi paper does not match to the gampi paper made today, and if it is infilled with new gampi paper, it is too glazy, too strong or extreme in expanding and shrinking. In such cases, we would use paper that is made of the mixture of kozo fiber and gampi fiber. As the fibers of kozo are longer than fibers of gampi, we sometimes cut the kozo fibers intentionally.

BLAT BURGUES

What is your approach when retouching when you have to do? Do you continue the painting or you leave like naturally?

KATO

If the artwork is designated, we might get an order from the Agency for Cultural Affairs about what to do. As I work for the national institution, I would like to tell the Japanese way of thinking about retouching. Firstly, we do not retouch lines or painted areas that are missing. If we do it, of course it will be done on the infill paper, not on the *honshi*, but still, we won't retouch the lines. We would paint it with a color that is close to the background or the base color.

Let's say that this is a Japanese painting. The base color might be this beige color, so we would use that beige color for retouching. Basically, in-painting with the base color is the standard approach.

HUGHES

日本の紙には楮や三椏、雁皮などありますが、例えば雁 皮紙に描いてある作品であれば、それは裏打ち紙の選択 にも影響しますか?本紙が雁皮紙であれば雁皮紙で裏 打ちをするのでしょうか?それとも楮紙で裏打ちをす るのでしょうか?

高瀬

裏打ちには、基本的に楮紙を使用します。それは紙の丈夫さなどから裏打ちには楮紙が適しているということです。しかし、補修には、それぞれの紙に合わせた紙を使用します。ただ稀に、雁皮紙で古い物は、今の雁皮紙で補修紙を作ると、光沢が強過ぎたり、強さが強過ぎたり、伸び縮みが激しいので、そういうときは、補修するものだけは、楮と雁皮を混合したりします。ただ、楮は、雁皮よりも繊維が長いので、そういうときは、楮をわざと短く切ったりします。

BLAT BURGUES

補彩をする際にはどのようなアプローチを取りますか? (欠けた線や色を) 描いて補いますか、それとも自然な色合いのままにしますか?

加藤

国の、特に指定品に関しては、文化庁から指導というか、こうしてくださいという注文が入るので、国に近い私のほうから日本の考え方をお伝えします。日本の場合はまず、線がなくなっていたり、絵が欠けていても、線を繋げたりはしません。もちろん、本紙の上にはせずに、するとすれば補修紙にですが、それでも線は繋げません。ベースの色に近い色で、色を塗ります。

例えばこれが日本の絵だとして、ベースの色はこのベージュ色ですかね。基本的には、この色で補彩するという のが今の日本のスタンダード的な方法です。

BLAT BURGUES

That is written in black.

KATO

That's a good point. Either the areas of loss are the red or the black, the filled areas would become beige color. But if it's too conspicuous, we may make it just a little bit blackish or just a little bit reddish. The spot of beige color in the large black area appears much whiter than the base color that actually is; it's too conspicuous. This is something that will continue to be discussed and the idea might change. But for the past 20 to 30 years, this is the principle that we have been going by. How about in your countries?

BLAT BURGUES

For us, it depends. Working in the museum, I have never done this much, this amount of retouching before, because in our museum it's more important, the aesthetics than if you are in the library or I think, of course, the approach is different. But if you inspect a big area, if you don't know how to continue and it's a big area, we do the same, like you did like in neutral. In that case, for example, I guess I would use like the black area, black paper. The idea is not to be able to create the drawing, not to be disturbed by the missing areas.

BORYSENKO

We have the same experience with Ms. BLAT BURGUES. It is very close to each other because we also have like a museum. It is also necessary to save the picture. But we use the lighter colors. And also, we have few objects, which we have experience of reconstruction of big part which was missed, but we have information how it looked like before because we have photo fixation and other and this part was made like reconstruction but lighter, much lighter. It was made on objects of architectural graphic. It was necessary because people work with this project. So,

BLAT BURGUES

黒で描かれていますよね。

加藤

そうなんです。赤が欠けようが、黒が欠けようが、基本的にはベージュ色になってしまいます。ただ、あまりにも目立つ場合には、ちょっとだけ黒っぽくしたり、ちょっとだけ赤っぽくしたりすることもあります。黒のなかに一部だけベージュがあると、その部分だけ地の色よりもさらに白く見えると思います。ただこれは、今後も議論していく中で変わっていくかもしれません。この20~30年は、この方針をとっています。皆さんの国ではどうしていますか?

BLAT BURGUES

状況次第です。私は美術館で働いていてそれほど補彩を行ったことがありません。我々の美術館では、図書館などと比べて、美学的な要素がより重要であるため、当然アプローチは異なると思います。ただ、広範囲でどう繋ぐべきか判断に困るときには、同じようにあまり目立たない自然な色にします。そういった場合には、例えば黒い部分が欠けているなら、黒い紙を使用すると思います。考えとしては、描いて補うということではなく、欠損部分が目立たないようにするということです。

BORYSENKO

私も博物館環境で働いており、BLAT BURGUES さんと同様の経験があります。私たち(の状況) はとても似ています。絵を守る必要があるという点もです。ただ、私たちはやや明るい色を使用します。大きな欠損部分を補塡するといった作品はほとんどありませんが、例えば、写真などの資料があり、かつての様子が分かるようなときには、(実物よりも)明るい色で、再現をすることもあります。そのときは、ある建築図面の補塡だったのですが、あるプロジェクトでその部分の情報が必要で、できれば補塡(再現)してほしいということでした。

they need this information if we can do this reconstruction.

NELIGAN

I was just going to say the same as Ms. BLAT BURGUES. We are slightly different because it is a library, so it's not really important. And actually, sometimes you're asked to make them quite obvious, so when people are looking at the object, that they realize this is not the original. But that is obviously because of where we are coming from, it's to use the object rather than to have it as aesthetically.

HUGHES

I am at a library as well, but we have a large exhibition program, where aesthetics is a high priority. For instance, we had a large photograph panorama going to exhibition. It had losses about this big all across the surface. The approach for something like that is that from a distance, you would not see it. But anyone that takes an interest in the object and looks at it closely, and also, it's a photograph, you cannot do it perfectly. We use like a stippled mark in a situation like that. It creates a lot of time but texturally it is different. But we do try and recomplete the finish, so it doesn't have a different reflectance to the original photograph.

BLAT BURGUES

In any case it's something that is discussed with the curators, it's like we don't decide to do this without the agreement.

KATO

I'd like to ask a question related to authenticity because now we encounter some issues in Japan. We have a long history of restoring artworks such as hanging scrolls and folding screens, so we know how to handle them and restore them in many cases. However, there is a wide variety of cases of the modern and contemporary artworks that we have issues with.

NELIGAN

私も BLAT BURGUES さんと同じことを言おうと思っていました。私は図書館勤務なので、少し異なり、(美学的要素は) そこまで重要ではありません。実際に、来館者が作品を観てオリジナルではないと判別できるほどに判りやすくしてほしいと言われることもあります。当然これはどういった施設に所属しているかによるもので、(図書館では)作品を美的に保つことよりも、それを使うことが目的だからです。

HUGHES

私も図書館で働いていますが、美学的な要素を重視する 大規模な展示プログラムがあります。例えば、展示予定 のとある大きなパノラマ写真には、このくらいの大きさ の欠損が表面のあちこちにありました。このような作品 に対しては、遠くから観て分からないようにします。も ちろん興味をもって近くで観た人にはわかります。ま た、写真なので完璧な補彩はできません。このような場 合は点描のような技法を用います。とても時間はかかり ますが、質感的には異なります。でも、仕上げを丁寧に 行うので、元の写真と反射率が異なるということはあり ません。

BLAT BURGUES

いずれにしても、学芸員と話し合って行われることで す。彼らの同意なしに私たちの判断で行うことはありま せん。

加藤

オーセンティシティに関連して、今、日本である課題に関して、質問したいことがあります。掛軸とか屏風は、もう何百年も扱ってきているので、どう直すかは大体決まってきているので分かりやすいですが、近現代の物で非常にいろいろなケースが出てきて悩んでいます。 例えば、大英博物館で開催されていたマンガ展では、原画という、作家さんが直接描いた紙がありました。原画 For example, in the manga—comic—exhibition at the British museum, there were the original drawings done by the manga artists. The drawing itself is done by the artist, but the dialogue, for example, may be not; well, specifically, the dialogue is printed and pasted on the artist's handwriting.

There are also some mending and infillings. For example, a pressure sensitive tape like a cellophane tape may have used. The question could be whether that is original or something that was done by the collectors. For another example, the manga artists may have used correction fluid to correct or improve their drawings many times. But, of course, the correction fluid is not the material produced with taking long-term storage into consideration. So, it has become brittle and starts being come off. When we think about consolidation or any treatment to slow down that deterioration, how should we treat it?

Furthermore, the biggest issue that I am concerning is the war-related items housed in a museum that I am working with at the moment. Do you know Japanese special attack units like the *kamikaze* pilots? They have left letters, their last letters, that were owned by the family of the deceased.

For example, what would you do if the letter was reattached using a pressure sensitive tape?

NELIGAN

By the family?

KATO

That is the point. Probably, we might naturally think of taking the tape off because it may cause problems later. As we have not treated something like that in Japan. We do not have the idea that the tape was placed there by the person who wrote the letter or the family of the deceased. So, everyone in a discussion said "Let's take this off because it's not good for preservation." Then I said "Hold on." Because, as you said, it could be placed there by the family. It is a last

は作家さんがオリジナルで描くのですが、例えば写植といって、吹き出しセリフは作家さんが手書きで書いた後に、印刷した紙を貼ってあったりします。

それから、補修、例えば、セロハンテープみたいなテープで貼ってあったりするものもあります。これが例えばオリジナルなのか、コレクターが貼ったのか分からないとか。あと、修正液を使って、どんどん修正していくのですが、これは長期保存を考えた材料ではないので当然、どんどん、ぼろぼろ落ちてきます。それを止めるときに、どう止めるべきか。

あと、私が関わっている仕事で今一番悩んでいるのが、 戦争関連の資料を集めた博物館の事例です。特攻隊って ご存じですかね、皆さん。彼らが残した手紙、遺書があ り、それを遺族の人たちが持っていたことがあります。 例えばセロハンテープがあったら、基本的に、皆さんど うします?

NELIGAN

遺族によって貼られたものですか?

加藤

そこなんです。基本的にはそのあと良くないことが起こるので、剥がそうという感覚があると思います。日本は、そういうのを今までやってこなかったためか、そのテープが本人あるいは遺族が貼ったテープかもしれないという意識があまりなかったようで、保存に悪いから剥がしましょうって、みんな言い出しました。そこで僕は、待ってくださいと止めました。おっしゃったとおり、それは例えば、家族が貼ったものかもしれない。遺書なので、多分、何度も読み返して、破れても、読みたいから

letter, so they probably read it over and over again. Even it gets torn, they would want to read it over again, and so, they might tape them down. Should we remove that? There is a water mark. Is it simply caused by water or tears? But there was a tendency to treat as normally we do; removing the tape and cleaning it with water, without thinking about these kinds of things.

貼った。それを剥がしていいのか。濡れた跡がある。これが、ただの水なのか、涙なのか。それを考えずに、つい普段のコンサベーションのように水洗いしましょう、テープ剥がしましょうという風潮がありました。

NELIGAN

We have that we believe them, it's alright. I think because it becomes part of the history. But this would be a discussion with the curator. It is not some decision I would make on my own. It is an ongoing history of the subject.

HUGHES

For us, it's often a balance of access to information and the history of use. We have a very large collection of World War I diaries, over 1000 diaries from Australian servicemen. For those, we only do treatments to stabilize them so that they can be handled. We do no aesthetic improvements for tape.

We just wait for the carrier to fall off and we will leave the staining, and then when we re-repair those areas we'll use a very lightweight, like a *Tengujo* tissue so that you can see the stain, you can see the text and you can actually see the tear. It needs to hold the item together. But we actually want all the damage to be visible because that whole thing of something being folded and unfolded or we have diaries with bullet holes in them.

But recently, we acquired a journal. It's very large of a man, an Australian man, who sailed around the world and his journal, with large watercolor illustrations was published about 30 years after the voyage. When that happened, he went through and changed a lot of sections. There are sections of text where he sticky-taped new text over his old text, and the sticky tape is now failing. It was a real ethical consideration of while

NELIGAN

確信が持てるのであれば、それは歴史の一部になるので、そのままでいいと思います。ただこれも自分では決断はしないで、学芸員と話し合います。その資料自体の歴史は続いているので。

HUGHES

私の館では、情報へのアクセスと利用履歴のバランスによって決めます。コレクションに第一次世界大戦期のオーストラリア軍兵士たちの日記があり、その数は 1000 を超えます。それらに関しては、取り扱える程度の安定化処置だけを行います。テープに対して美的改善の処置は行っていません。

テープは接着力が低下して自然に剥がれ落ちるまでそのままにしておきます。テープ跡もそのままにすると思います。そういった箇所の修理を行う際には、典具帖紙などの非常に薄い紙を使用して、テープ跡も文字も破れも全て見られるようにすると思います。破れた部分は貼り合わせる必要があるけれど、畳んだり広げたりを繰り返した跡や日記に空いた銃弾跡などというものはその資料の一部なので、そういった損傷は全てきちんと見えるようにします。

例えば最近入手した資料の一つに日記があります。世界中を航海した男性の、オーストラリア人男性の日記で、かなり大きく、航海から約30年後に刊行された水彩画付きのものです。刊行に当たって彼は日記に目を通し、多くの修正を行いました。書き直したものを原文の上から粘着テープで貼っている箇所もあり、そのテープが今まさに剥がれ落ちてきています。真に倫理的に考慮しなければならないのは彼が世に出したかった話がこれで、

he wanted this change, this is the story he wanted published.

But then, researchers are very interested in what he wrote originally because the diary is basically a love letter to his wife that spans a few years. The compromise that we've come up with is where any pieces that have come loose, we're just hinging them back in place at the top edge, so that they can be opened by researchers. But there are also small envelopes, which are sealed and they're labeled and they're only to be looked at by his wife. When we digitize the journal, those things won't be photographed because the library respects that they are private. But we leave all the tape until it falls off.

HILL

In Canada, if it's a contemporary work of art, artists have copyright and rights over their work. If an object, like what you're describing, came into our lab, we would have to contact the—if the artist is looking—contact the artist to find out what his or her wishes are for the object. What has been happening and what we've been doing is borrowing the work that has been done with time-based media, where there have been extensive artist interview questionnaires developed.

KATO

In some cases, it is difficult to have an interview, isn't it? There was a problem in Japan. One painting was damaged, and the artist was still alive. The people took the painting to the artist and asked him what he wanted to have done to this for conservation. Then, he changed it largely. Because he had painted this when he was young and he wasn't quite happy with it.

HILL

Yes. The same type of situation has happened in Canada. But legally, that artist still has rights over the object that he made. While from a conservation ethic, it may not fit our standards; legally the artist is

彼がそう変えたかったというところです。一方で、研究者たちは航海当時に彼が書いた原文に非常に興味を持っています。というのもこの日記が複数年にわたる妻へのラブレターとも言えるからです。剥がれかけのテープに対して思いついた妥協案はテープの上端に紙を貼って留めるというものです。そうすれば研究者の方々はそれを上にあげて下に書いてあることも見ることができます。

また、小さな封筒が複数あり、どれも密封され、ラベルが貼ってあります。彼の妻のみが見ることを許されるものです。図書館として彼らのプライベートに敬意を払い、日記をデジタル化する際にはそういったものは含まないようにしました。なので、テープはすべて自然に剥がれ落ちるまでそのままにします。

HILL

カナダでは、現代アート作品の場合、作家さんがすべての作品に対して権利を、著作権を持っています。もし先ほどの(加藤さんの)話にあったような作品が私たちの手元に来た場合、もし作家さんがご存命なら連絡を取り、保存修復をどのようにしてほしいか本人に希望を尋ねます。実際どういうことがあって何をしているかというと、タイムベースド・メディアで制作された作品を借りています。そういった際には作家さんへのインタビュー用に非常に長いアンケートを作成しています。

加藤

それって難しい場合もありますよね。日本でも、問題が起きたことがあります。絵が破れたのでどう直すかというときに、作者が存命だったので作者のところへ持って行ったら、大きく描き替えられてしまったということがありました。というのは、それが若いときの作風で、気に入らなかったようです。

HILL

同じようなことはカナダでもありました。それでも作品 の権利はその作家さんにあります。保存修復の倫理から 見て我々の基準に合っていないとしても、法律的に作家 さんはそうする(描き替える)権利を持っています。 entitled to do that.

HOBBS

I was also going to give another example. At the archives, last year, we had case files of the assassination of Malcolm X came through the lab. I don't know if everyone is familiar with Malcolm X, but it included the evidence from the trial. That included a notebook that he had in his coat pocket that had a bullet in it, as well as blood stains from the things that he had in his clothes when he was shot.

In that case, we really didn't do anything other than stabilize and house the materials. But it's also an interesting question because it belongs to the City of New York. We wouldn't go to the family and ask how do you feel about this or what are your desires or wishes. It's all just up to the city.

HUGHES

Similarly, there's an Australian explorer called Lasseter. He was famous for dying out in the outback, while looking for gold. We have a letter that was found on his dead body. Recently, we had a client, a researcher, who requests to access it. It's incredibly fragile and that, for instance, is an item that we wouldn't repair unless we absolutely had to. For client access, we just fully encapsulated it in Mylar®, so it could be looked at from both sides without touching the paper. But that none of the tears are repaired. There are stains from handling from his skin.

KATO

The issues of authenticity will continue to be raised more and more from now on. What each country considers about and approaches to these issues would be of a good reference for each other. So, we'd like to continue to share these kinds of experience and thoughts.

HOBBS

もう一つ別の事例を。公文書館では昨年、マルコム・Xの暗殺事件に関する資料を修復しました。皆さんがマルコム・Xのことをどれほどご存じかわからないのですが、裁判での証拠品などで、例えば、彼がコートのポケットに入れていたノートには銃弾が埋まったままですし、撃たれた時に身に着けていたものには血痕があります。このときは、安定化処置と適切な保存以外は何もしませんでした。ただ、これは非常に興味深い問題でもあります。なぜかというと、これらがニューヨーク市の所有物になっているからです。遺族を訪ねて、どう思うかどうしてほしいかといった希望や要望を聞くことはできず、すべての判断が市に委ねられます。

HUGHES

似たような状況です。Lasseter というオーストラリア人冒険家がいます。金鉱の探索中に僻地で亡くなったことで有名な方です。彼の遺体とともに発見された手紙があるのですが、最近、研究者からそれを閲覧したいという申し出がありました。非常に脆弱ですが、必要に迫られるまで、修理はしたくないと思っている資料の一つです。ですので閲覧に際しては、手紙を完全に覆える大きさのマイラーシート®で挟み込んで、手紙そのものに触れずに両面が見られるようにしました。破れも何も修理していません。彼が手紙を素手で扱ってできた染みも残っています。

加藤

オーセンティシティの問題というのは、これからもどん どん続いていくと思いますし、それぞれの国での取り組 みがお互いの参考になると思いますので、ぜひこれから も、そういう経験を共有していきたいと思います。

Revised by GORO Rika

校閲 後藤里架





Fig. 2 Participants 研修生



Fig. 3 Participants 研修生



Fig. 4 Participants 研修生



Fig. 5 Lecturers 講師



Fig. 6 Lecturers 講師

2 Summary of the results of the questionnaire

アンケート結果

The participants filled in our questionnaire after the course. The representative answers are shown below. 研修終了後に参加者にアンケートを実施した。代表的な質問事項への回答を以下に紹介する。

Number of questionnaires handed out: 10 Response rate: 100 %

回答数:10 回答率:100%

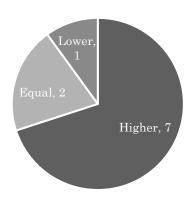
What do you think about the course (general co-ordination)?

Excellent	10
Very Good	0
Good	0
Fair	0
Poor	0



Do you think that the overall level of the course was lower/ equal to/ higher than what you expected?

Higher 7
Equal 2
Lower 1



Do you consider that you have met your own goals for the course? Please specify what these goals were.

- My main goals were to get to know better about Japanese art conservator on paper, to be able to do this
 in a good atmosphere with other colleagues and to have a better approach to Japanese culture. I am
 really satisfied as I think I met all these goals by far, the experience has exceeded the limits of these
 aims.
- Yes, my goals were met. Acquaintance with traditional Japanese restoration techniques and the possibility to apply them in practice under the guidance of high-level specialists. To study various traditional papers of the best quality and to gain knowledge about their features. To get the information about the adhesives and restoration processes unique to Japan and the opportunity to buy tools and

materials for restoration, for the further work and development of restoration skills. The opportunity to share information with colleagues in my country. To protect from improper restoration the art objects of traditional Japanese culture which are stored in Ukraine.

- Yes! 1: I know what to do and especially what not to do approaching an eastern work of art on paper. 2: I met international colleagues with which I'm actively in contact and we are sharing information and professional experience. 3: I discovered Japan and its culture and traditions. 4: To enter in the ICCROM family!
- Yes, my understanding of Japanese paper making has increased, techniques used in scroll conservation
 has increased, understanding of materials (brushes, paper, paste) has improved.
- Yes. I hoped in particular to learn new practices and methods of treatment to implement in my daily work.
- Yes. I wanted to come to the course with an open mind to what the teachers and my co students could teach me. I wanted to be able to give the course 100% of my focus. This was really easy for me to achieve as all the teachers and co students were kind and generous with their knowledge and assistance. I learnt so many things that I feel ready to bring back to my workplace and share with my colleagues.
- Yes. For example, learning the usage Japanese traditional tools and adhesives; understanding of Japanese paper and paper-making skills, structure of handscrolls, handling of different format paintings; and knowing about the terminology.
- Yes, my goals were met. My goals were to learn and understand the techniques of paper making in Japan, paste making and the history and use of tools specifically used in Japan, Japanese brushes and knives.
- Yes! The goals were having an idea of the mounting of a handscroll and to learn more about materials
 and tools used in the conservation of Japanese paintings.
- The topmost question for me was: what is the so called "Japanese paper". The term is overused and misused, as I understand now, in this part of world where I live. I got the answer. As we have also a collection of Asian art including Japanese ukyo-e (donations to the University from the German/Swedish/Russian 19th cen professors or landlords) I have a new, conscious look at them while preserving, exhibiting or conserving them. Some of these objects have been restored long time ago and maybe we should consider re-conserving them (at least to remove the acid paper that has a direct contact with the originals).

Which elements of the course do you think will be of most immediate use in your own work? In what way?

- Definitely, starch preparation and use together with the brushes and the different uses of the different
 Japanese papers, as these are the elements from Japanese conservation techniques, I use the most in a
 daily basis.
- Absolutely all the information received throughout the course is very important for me from the smallest
 details and methods of application of tools to the decisions on the manufacture of boxes for the
 preventative conservation. Many things I need to learn and look for more information, such as
 information on the acidity of some traditional paper and on neutralizing this acidity with glue during
 lining.

- The exact use of the products for the conservation: I'll be able to choose the best papers, tools, the right brushes for my works in western conservation paper.
- As an educator I will be sharing the course information with my students. The most immediate use will
 be discussions and practice in paste making, discussions on adhesives, and use and maintenance of
 brushes.
- The way we make paste! Also the way we select papers for conservation projects and how we care for our brushes
 - The practical skills and the understanding of Japanese paper and adhesives. I work on a predominately western collection but use a lot of Japanese papers, adhesives, and tools in my work. Learning about these from Japanese experts has given me a much greater depth of knowledge and respect for these materials. I will apply my new knowledge in paper to make informed decisions when selecting paper for treatments. The practical skills in adhesive preparation will be used to improve the adhesives I use. The knowledge of how the brushes are made and how each is correctly used will change the way I work with them.
- Knowledge of Japanese paper and tools, we could have better understandings of what kind of paper to choose at work and skills can be used when we do lining.
- All of the practical elements will be of immediate use within my own work, for instance the paste making, tear repair techniques, paper cutting, water cutting.
- The practical work, as it is likely that we will remount a handscroll in the next couple of years at the studio.
- I also got the essence of good planning before starting with the work. It is a proverb in Estonian as well "measure 7 times and cut once", but we tempt to forget it. As I wrote before, it was important to learn packing and unrolling the scrolls; to organize your table etc., to minimize the risk of unintended damaging of the object or myself. We shall work through the method of preparing paste, and the use of different types of Japanese paper. Also, I hope we can buy now the true Japanese paper from the contacts we were given, or at least I know what to ask from the providers.

What would you consider as the most important results for yourself of the experience of having participated in the course?

- I think in these 3 weeks I gained knowledge not only professional but also in a personal level: the respect of one's own way of living and working, with such attention to details that in the end make the difference in the results one can get, either professional and personal.
- The knowledge gained at this course and the opportunity for cooperation. This course is invaluable for
 participants from countries such as Ukraine, in which there is no support for the development of
 restorers. This is a unique chance to develop professionally and to receive information to be able
 preserve the cultural heritage.
- To have understand that I've got still a lot to learn!
- A new understanding of adhesives and how to make them (particularly wheat paste), a more full
 understanding of paper making (study tour) and the urgent challenge to preserve these techniques
 over the next generations. The study tour reinforced the information covered in weeks one and three.

The study tour was wonderful as it provided context and a more nuanced understanding of traditional craft, why it is critical to preserve and how it related to contemporary Japan.

- Sharing and applying what I've learned are the most important for me.
- It is hard to say. I feel I have come away with so much knowledge but also a really strong connection to my co students which has broadened my professional network immensely. The group of students definitely enriched an already fantastic experience.
- Japanese skills and detail-oriented attitude.
- The results are twofold, the experience of learning about Japanese conservation in Japan from TNRICP
 and also to meet a group of my peers from very different backgrounds, this networking opportunity both
 were equally invaluable. Both on the same level, the practical work and meeting wonderful colleagues
 from all over the world.
- Personally I loved the practical work (though haven't done it before) and as my teacher Ms. Takase told me I have skills to do "small works", so I might consider practicing more.

Other comments or suggestions

- I just wanted to thank once again to have given me the opportunity to attend this course. I get with me a lot of information, knowledge and friends. This course fulfilled my expectations in many senses. Thanks so much! And also congratulations for the amazing and effective performance of the whole course. You are a fantastic team!
- I want to thank from all my heart for the honor of participating in the JPC 2019 course. This is a very important opportunity. I will be very happy to be of service to you if you need any help or support. I also want to thank the entire organizational team for the highly professional organization of the course, and the teachers for the best lectures and practical exercises.
- The course was really a wonderful and invaluable experience! I'm so glad to have the opportunity to attend.
- I was so impressed by the expertise of everyone we met. The generosity everyone showed in sharing their time and knowledge with us. Atsuko Takase and Atsushi Ogasawara were fantastic to have as teachers, their experience was clear and they worked incredibly hard to ensure we learnt the best practice for every step of the process. They were also incredibly kind and supportive as we each struggled with different steps of the process.
- Thank you for providing this opportunity for us to know more about Japanese Conservation and sharing the knowledge generously. It was so lucky and happy for me to join the course! Thanks to every staff that supports the workshop as well, it is the best workshop that I've ever attended so far, I enjoyed the study and the life in Japan a lot!

3 Glossary

用語集

A Ai

藍

Indigo: an annual herbaceous plant. Its leaves produce a blue dye when crushed and exposed to oxygen. Though a number of species of such plants exist, that traditionally and most frequently used on the mainland of Japan is *tadeai*, a relative of buck wheat (*Polygoum tinctorium* or *Persicaria tinctoria*). Cultivated predominately in northern Shikoku, its leaves can be used fresh, but are generally fermented, stored, and then vatted with an alkaline solution. To make a pigment, oxidized indigo is collected, purified and pulverized. *Aibo* is the indigo powder sticks which are mixed with animal hide glue and are solidified. They can be rubbed with some water on a stone to release the color like *sumi*.

B Baita (Banita)

盤板

Work board: a flat thick board of Japanese cypress measuring more than 90 cm × 180 cm and set on legs. This is the most important tool of the restorer as its large, smooth surface is essential for spreading paintings and fabrics out flat for work. Commonly it is made up of narrow boards fitted together along their lengths and held in place at both ends with a cross board joined with a tongue-and-groove or dovetail joint to form a breadboard edge (*hashibami*). It is most important that the board is even and flat; when it begins to split or warp it is disassembled, planned, and reassembled. Also known as *oita*.

Botsugi

棒継ぎ

Straight-cut overlapped join: joining cut sheets of paper by overlapping the pasted edges of the sheets and rubbing. Sheet after sheet is attached to form a long roll of continuous paper. This can then be cut to desired lengths and used for *shitabari*, linings, etc.

Bunjinhyogu

文人表具

Literati mounting: a style of mounting used for Chinese-influenced secular painting and calligraphy.

Butsugahyogu

仏画表具

Buddhist mounting: a style of mounting commonly used for Buddhist paintings.

Byobu

屏風

Folding screen, used as room dividers or for interior decoration. These are sets of two, four, six or eight lattice frames, papered panels connected to each other with paper hinges so that they can be spread open to display a continuous image or folded against each other for light-tight storage.

C Chijimi

縮み

Shrinking: a method of compensating for different contractions of various adjacent cloths or papers. This is done particularly when fabrics or papers that contract and expand to different extents are joined together during the assembly of a mounting.

The shrinking can be done either by folding the cloth (*orichijimi*) or by controlled dampening of the fabric to induce varying degrees of natural shrinkage with drying.

Chikushi

竹紙

Bamboo paper: paper made with bamboo as one of its primary ingredients.

Chuberi

中縁

Central border fabric on a hanging scroll mounting, *Yamatohyogu*. It surrounds the painting and continues to the edges of the mounting on both sides.

Chumawashi

中廻し

Framing fabric that surrounds the painting on a *butsugahyogu*. The mounting fabric comprising the middle section of a hanging scroll and surrounding the painting.

D Denier

デニール

A unit used to express the thickness and weight of thread, such as silk or rayon. The measurement is calculated by weight in grams per 9000 meters of thread.

Dosa

礬水

Sizing: a liquid brushed over the support material, made by mixing a small amount of alum into a warm animal hide glue solution. The addition of alum makes the dried glue harder, thus improving its waterproofing function. If, however, the amount of alum is too great, alum burning occurs, a common cause of disintegration. Traditionally, *dosa* was applied to the paper or silk support in order to avoid bleeding of *sumi* and to ensure that the glue binder mixed with the pigment was not selectively absorbed.

E Enpaku

鉛白

Lead white. Pigment. 2PbCO₃ • Pb(OH)₂

F Fukurin

覆輪

Thin protective and decorative paper strips folded over the edges of paintings on silk to prevent fraying.

Fukurobari

袋張り

Pouch pasting: floating lining. The method used for applying the last layer or two of papers for a *shitabari* papering of a wood frame for such formats as folding screens, sliding doors and standing screens. The process involves applying paste to approximately 3 mm around the edges of the sheets of paper when attaching them to the underlying layers. The *fukurobari* paper overlap, resulting in something like the internal layers of a down comforter. The size of the paper, the amount they overlap and the cut of the edges depends upon the intended use of the *shitabari*. Also known as *ukebari* or *ukekake*.

Fukushimaginu

福島絹

Outer reinforcement silk. See Uwamakiginu.

Funori

布海苔

Seaweed paste. This paste is derived from three kinds of seaweed: *Mafunori* (*Gloiopeltis tenax*), *Hanafunori* (*Gloiopeltis complanata*) and *Fukurofunori* (*Gloiopeltis furucata*). After washing, the seaweed is soaked overnight in water. The swollen seaweed is then dissolved by heating and the liquid passed through a straining cloth. Mixed with animal hide glue, it can be used to consolidate pigments and to prevent their bleeding. When the mounting fabrics are frayed or pulled out of shape, seaweed paste is used like laundry starch, giving the fibers body so they can be stretched flat on a board to align their patterns. Seaweed paste may be mixed with starch paste to do an infill in a paper support or to apply temporary facings and linings.

Furunori

古糊

Aged paste. In the cold season (January to the beginning of February), large quantities of *shinnori* (fresh paste) are made and stored in lidded earthenware pots placed in a cool, ventilated spot (often under the floor of a Japanese traditional wood house). Here it is left to sit for as long as ten years. For the first five or so years, mold grows on the surface of the pate and the inside of the lid. Every year during the cold season when bacterial activity is slow, the mold is removed and fresh well water poured over the paste. Eventually, the annual growth of mold blackens and finally no longer breeds. The aged paste (also known as cold paste, *kannori*) has turned an opaque yellowish white and become stiff and granular. This matured paste is a rather weak adhesive, which is thinned to a liquid and used for applying subsidiary linings (*mashiura*) overall subsidiary linings (*nakaura*) and final backings (*soura*). Aged paste may also be mixed with *shinnori* and used for initial linings, joining (*kiritsugi*) and tacking down folded edges (*mimiori*) of mountings.

Fuseura 伏せ裏 Reinforcement patch seen in some old restorations. This refers to silk parches, sometimes as large as one fourth the size of the painting, applied as a short-cut method to give the impression that all the areas of silk loss have been minutely infilled. In fact this is a very dangerous method, as it invites delamination and eventual disintegration of the entire picture.

Fushokufu

不織布

Non-woven fabric. Rayon paper is used to support the painting during treatment. Felt is used for laying out the painting to dry.

Fusuma 襖 Papered sliding doors, used as room partitions. These panels have a lattice inner structure of wood covered with layers of paper (*shitabari*), the last of which may be a painting.

Futai 風帯 Decorative fabric strips: two flat strips of fabric sewn to the hanging rod (*hasso*) of the mounting. They are allowed to hang down loose over the upper portion of the mounting. Problems may occur if these are carelessly placed when rolling up the

scroll, or simply from the extra thickness they add to a portion of the rolled-up scroll. A variation is to incorporate the strips into the upper section of the mounting: *haritsuke futai* and *warikomi futai*.

Futomakisoejiku 太巻添軸 Roller clamp. Hanging scrolls and hand scrolls are stored rolled up around the roller rod. In order to reduce the wear and resulting creases incurred by repeated rolling and unrolling of the scrolls for display and storage, a wide diameter rolling rod is preferable. This reduces stress on the multi-layered mountings. In the last century, wide diameter paulownia wood roller clamps were devised as a conservation measure. These removable rod-shaped clamps are closed around the roller rod before rolling up a scroll for storage. Also known as *futomaki*.

G Gampi

Wikstroemia sikokiana or Diplomorpha sikokiana.

雁皮

This shrub only grows wild in the mountains of warm areas. The fibers from the bark are short and strong, producing a smooth paper with a hard surface. It is well known in the form of *torinoko* paper and paper for fine calligraphy.



Ganryo

Mineral or earth pigment

顔料

Gasenshi

画仙紙

A thin, delicate paper made from a mixture of highly processed short fibers, usually including bamboo and bast fibers. The paper is usually white and bears distinct laid lines from the bamboo screen used during the formation process (see also Nagashizuki). Although gasenshi is Chinese origin, it is also produced in Japan, with somewhat different materials from the Chinese gasenshi, it is used primarily for calligraphy and ink painting.

Gofun

胡粉

Calcium carbonate. White pigment and painting primer. CaCo₃. The most common source is the shells of oysters and clams

Gunjo

Azurite. Blue pigment. 2CuCO3 · Cu(OH)2

群青

H Hadaura(uchi)

肌裏(打)

First lining or initial lining. Applying the first lining (*hadaurauchi*) involves pasting a strengthening paper directly onto the back of the painting. For paintings on paper, a dilute liquid paste (*mizunori*) is used, while for ones done on silk, a more viscous soft paste is appropriate. A paper that is comparatively thin yet firm, like thin *mino* paper, is used. The paste is applied to the lining paper, then the lining paper is lifted

up with a flat bamboo lifting stick (*kakedake*) and slowly laid pasted side down on the back side of the painting while brushing it into contact with a smoothing brush (*nadebake*).

Hake

刷毛

Wide, flat brush used for applying paste and water or for smoothing or beating. All the brushes called *hake* (pronounce as *bake* after other syllables) have in common a handle with a central pole rising from a flat, broad wooden base into which hairs or bristles are inserted, clamped and sewn in place. Round-shouldered brushes are made in Kyoto area, straight-shouldered ones in Tokyo area. *Hake* contrast with the round bamboo-handle brushes (*fude*) used for painting.

Hakubyo

白描

Ink sketch. These are monochrome line paintings on blank backgrounds. The style of *hakubyo* paintings was imported from China and popular already in the eighth century. It was used for sketching religious figures as well as secular subjects.

Hakurakudome

剥落止め

Consolidation: prevention of pigment exfoliation. Since the pigments of paintings that have survived hundreds of years are often chalking or peeling from the support and are fragile due to the deterioration of the animal glue (nikawa) binder that was used, the consolidation of the pigment layer and re-affixing of peeled-off or powdery pigments is a basic process in the restoration of paintings. This also ensures no further exfoliation occurs during the restoration process and stabilizes the painting after the restoration is completed. The consolidation of the pigment layer is done by applying dissolved animal glue to either the front or the back of the painting. Reaffixing pigments is accomplished by placing dissolved animal glue under the pigment and applying pressure during drying.

Harishiro

張り代

False margins. Paper strips added to the edges of paintings, fabrics and mountings to facilitate pasting them to the drying board without applying paste to the piece itself. *Harishiro* can also be used to temporarily secure fabrics being given an initial lining.

Hashibami

端喰み

Hanging rod fittings.

Hashira

柱

The two strips of mounting fabric that run vertically along both sides of the painting. These are the vertical portions of the *chuberi*, *chumawashi*, and *soberi*.

Hasso

八双

Hanging rod or head rod. The semi-circular shape of the upper rod of a hanging scroll and the head rod of hand scroll allows the mounting to lie flat against itself when rolled up. It is made, like the roller rod, from the white outer wood of cedar.

Hera

ヘラ

Spatula. Made of bamboo or bone. It is used for peeling off paper, for making creases and for cutting along dampened folded edges, as in a water cut.

Heri

縁

Border. *Heri* (pronounce as *beri* after other syllables) usually refers to the strips of fabric or paper running vertically along both sides of the painting and comprising the edges of the mounting. <u>See also Chuberi and Soberi.</u>

Hikkake

ひっかけ

Lifting bamboo. A flat narrow stick shaped like a ruler and made from bamboo or wood. During the process of lining it is used to safely lift the pasted paper. In the Kyoto area it is usually called a *take* (bamboo). When necessary a regular ruler may also be used. Also known as *kakedake*.

Himo

紐

Cord. Both hanging cord (*kakeo*) and wrapping cord (*makio*) varies from 0.6 cm to 1.5 cm in width depending on the size of the painting, but for any given scroll, the same type of cord is used for both hanging and wrapping cords. Common cords are flat braids (*hirauchi*) combining white, black, green and possibly yellow, silk threads (*takubokuuchi*). Alternatively, plain-colored cords of light brown, brown, pale blue or purple can be used. In the Edo and Meiji periods, woven cotton cords were also common, but today almost all are silk.

Hinoki 檜 Japanese cypress, *Chamaecyparis obtusa Ebdl*. The strength, fine grain, and easy workability of this wood have made it the main stay of Japanese architecture since ancient times, an example being The Shosoin Repository in Todaiji, Nara. It is also used for boxes, frames, and the majority of Japanese sculpture since the Heian period.

Hiraginu 平絹 Plain weave silk. Although it refers to any plain weave silk with a balanced warp and weft, the term is often used specifically for plain weave silks dyed a single, solid color. Any unfigured silk (*mujigire*) in a mounting, the support silk of the painting *ryoken*, and the support fabrics applied to the back of the mounting (*uwamakiginu and jikudasuke*) would all be varieties of *hiraginu*.

Hoken 補絹 Infilling silk or patches. Today losses in the support are filled in with repair silk cut to match the shape of the missing area. Previously it was more common that silk patches larger than the missing areas were attached directly to the back of the support silk. As this method was often not employed with the intention of reinforcing the weakened areas of loss, but only of covering them, some workshops make the distinction between patching (ate ginu) and infilling (hoken). See also Fuseura.

Honshi 本紙 Artwork. Although literally means "main paper", the term refers to the twodimensional silk or paper support that is being mounted, which may bear a painting, print, or piece of calligraphy. Hosai

補彩

Adding color to infilled areas. In the past this often involved inpainting of lines and pigmentation, but today it is restricted to toning the infill to a shade slightly lighter than the background color of the painting.

Hoshitsuki

星突き

Awl. Identical to a standard awl, this has a needle 3 cm to 9 cm long placed in a handle. It is used to form holes and to make tiny marks that aid in placement, measurement and establishing edges. Also known as *senmaidoshi*.

Hoshuginu

補修絹

Silks used for infilling. For silk infills, a new repair silk that duplicates the thread diameter and density of weave of the original support is used. In order to adjust the flexibility and tear-strength of the new silk to that of the original, the entire newly woven silk is exposed to gamma waves, electron beam radiation or ultraviolet rays. This artificially deteriorates the silk fiber (*rekkaginu*), making it slightly weaker than the naturally deteriorated support silk. See also Hoken.

Hoshusagyodai

補修作業台

Restoration work table.

Hoshushi

補修紙

Repair paper or infill paper. Since as a rule the infills are made of the same material as the original painting supports, not only *kozo* paper, but also others become necessary, such as paper made from *mitsumata* and *gampi*, as well as Chinese paper (*toshi* and *gasenshi*) made from a mixture of bamboo with other fibers. For infilling, one chooses a paper as close to the original as possible. There are times when one must special-order appropriate paper directly from the papermaker, or actually make small amounts of paper within the workshop using a mould and bamboo screen. The infill paper (*hoshushi*) or silk (*hoshuginu*) is usually colored by dyeing before being put in place and then toned afterwards to blend with the background of the painting.

Hozonbako

保存箱

Storage box. Wood boxes used for storing scrolls are made of paulownia with tight fitting interlocking (*inro*) lids, where an indent in the inner half of the rim of the lid fits snugly over an indent in the outer edge of the rim of the box walls. Often two boxes are made: an inner one left uncoated and an outer one that is lacquered. Experience has shown the effectiveness of such storage boxes as an atmospheric control. Their effectiveness has also been demonstrated scientifically.

Hyogu

表具

Mounting. More specific than the term *hyoso*, it usually refers to the traditions and techniques of mounting scrolls and can refer specifically to those of hanging scrolls.

Hyogushi

表具師

A person who does *hyogu*. A broad term that refers to someone who works with paper, brushes and paste to make hanging scrolls, but may extend to non-art-related jobs such as the papering of sliding doors (*fusuma* and *shoji*).

Hyoso

表装

Mounting. The term refers to a wide variety of Japanese methods for presenting and protecting art works done on paper or silk: hanging scrolls, rolled hand scrolls, screens, door panels and wall paintings being the most common. The core technique is the application of paper linings to support the art works.

Ibota(ro)

イボタ (蝋)

An insect wax which is secreted by Ericerus pela, a kind of coccid. A Chinese wax.

Ichimonji

一文字

Fabric strips attached directly above and below a painting mounted as a hanging scroll. These thin horizontal strips of fabric are of a different material from the rest of the mounting and provide a visual accent. *Futai* are generally made of the same fabric.

Inrobako

印籠箱

A box, usually made from paulownia wood, with a snugly fitting lid that ensures atmospheric control within. The indented inner edge of the lid locks over the indented lip of the box. See also Hozonbako.

Jiku

軸

Roller rod.

Jikudasuke

軸助け

Reinforcement fabric. To aid in reinforcing the edge of the mounting wrapped around the roller rod (*jiku*), these silk strips are added to the back of the mounting at both sides of the lower edge of a mounting.

Jikugi

軸木

A component of a roller rod. The white outer wood of cedar (sugi) is shaved into a round rod and attached to the bottom of the mounting. The jiku refers to the complete unit of jikugi and the roller knobs, jikushu. When the scroll is rolled up for storage, the roller rod forms a core around which the scroll is rolled. When it is hung on the wall, the rod helps hold the scroll flat and suspend it away from the wall. Large hanging scrolls require roller rods with greater diameters in order to reduce the possibility of adding stress to the mounting from warping. The thick rods are hollow and constructed by interlocking several pieces of wood. Other rods have the simplicity of those used for Sutra scrolls, and are made from two overlapping lengths of wood that can be adjusted in length. Also known as nakajiku.

Jikusaki

Roller knobs. See Jikushu.

軸先

Jikushu

軸首

Roller knobs. For these decorative knobs placed at both ends of the roller rod (*jiku*), various woods, ivory, and metal can be used. Woods include rosewood (*shitan*), ebony (*kokutan*), Indian ironwood (*tagayasan*), black persimmon (*kurogaki*), and mulberry

(kuwa). Other materials span natural crystal, porcelain, gilded copper, brass, enamel, bamboo (take), and various types of horn. Among the wood roller knobs, some are painted with lacquer, possibly decorated with maki-e or raden. Simple round ivory roller knobs (kirijiku) are widely used from Butsuga hyogu to Bunjin hyogu, but due to international concern over wanton killing of elephants (CITES, Washington), today even for pieces where ivory ends would be most suitable, effort is made to find a suitable substitute. Metal ones made from rolled sheet copper are often incised with patterns of lotus arabesques or Buddhist wheels (rinpo) or cut to make open work patterns and are commonly used for Butsuga hyogu. For Bunjin hyogu, in imitation of Chinese hanging scrolls, extra-long ivory or ebony roller knobs (nagajiku) that jut out further than the typical Japanese knobs, as well as variant styles with complex forms turned on a lathe are often used. Also known as jikusaki.

Jinnori

Paste made from pure wheat starch. See Shinnori.

沈糊

Jisuke 地透け Exposed ground weave. The distracting condition of having the weave structure of the support silk stand out, which occurs when the color of the lining is too close to white or much lighter than that of the support silk.

Joge

Upper and lower sections of the hanging scroll mounting.

上下

Also pronounce as kamishimo, or known as tenchi.

Jogi

定規 (定木)

Wooden ruler with straight edge and right angle without scale. Various straight and right-angle edges are indispensable for establishing lines and angles, for folding paper and fabric, and for trimming. Made from a thin, flat stick of Japanese cypress. Both edges are strengthened with inlays of a hardwood like cherry. Straight edges of nagajogi is over 200 cm, sanjaku jogi is about 106 cm, and kojogi is about 60 cm. Right angles are formed with a square (kigane or magarijogi). They are used for cutting angles and aligning fabric patterns.

Juzu (Zuzu)

uzu) Rubbing beads or buddhist rosary: a string of glass beads or soapberry seeds

数珠

(mukuroji). See also Urazuri.

K Kabeharitsuke

Paintings pasted to a papered lattice-work set into a wall.

壁張付け

Kaeshibari

返し張り

Reversing and reattaching the mounting for further drying. In the final stages of the mounting process, after the entire mounting has been left with false margins pasted to the drying board (*karibari*) for several weeks or months, it is removed, its back rubbed with beads, and then it is reattached to the drying board turned face in

(*kaeshiari*). The mounting, removed and then reattached dry, is able to contract and relax, further compensating for the differences in its varied elements. The reverse drying is done without dampening.

Kakedake

Lifting bamboo. See Hikkake.

掛竹

Kakejiku

Hanging scroll. Also known as kakemono.

掛軸

Kakemono

Hanging scroll. Also known as kakejiku.

掛物

Kakeo

Hanging cord attached to two or four ring-mails fixed on the upper rod, Hasso.

掛緒

Kakibyoso

Painted mounting. See Kakihyogu.

描き表装

Kakihyogu

描き表具

Painted mounting. The artist paints the main picture, and then paints an imitation of a mounting surrounding his painting on the same support silk (or in rare cases paper). The proportions and patterns of the painted mounting closely follow those of an assembled mounting. Used historically for Buddhist paintings, the technique was also popular during the Edo period for secular paintings, often to dramatic effect. The painted piece of silk or paper is mounted with lining paper and finished with support rods, fittings, and cords in the manner of a standard hanging scroll. Also known as *kakibyoso*.

Kamishimo

See Joge.

上下

Kanagu

Metal fittings.

金具

Kanajiku

Metal roller knobs: often copper with open work or hammered designs and gold

金軸

plated.

Kankanagu

鐶金具

Metal fittings and hanging ring nails. The ring-shaped heads of these nails provide a hole for attaching the hanging cord (*kakeo*) to the scroll. The nails are driven into the upper rod (*hasso*) through a decorative washer, either diamond shaped or four lobed (*mokko*). Some varieties are like cotter pins that can be spread open (*wariashi*).

Others work like a cleat (ashizuri).

Kannori

寒糊

Aged paste: literally "cold paste", referring to its being mode during the cold season. See Furunori.

Kanshikiho

乾式法

Dry removal method. When removing old first linings, water is needed to soften the paste. The most common method is to heavily dampen the painting and wait for the paste to loosen and then gently peel off the linings. This may take some hours or days. When, however, the condition of either the painting itself or the lining is such that large amounts of water would risk damage, minimal amounts of water are sparingly applied to small areas at a time and the lining is picked off bit by bit. For such dry removals it is necessary to protect the front of the painting with a temporary lining attached with a traditional weak adhesive like seaweed paste. Dry removal is used to effect in three cases: 1) when there is fear that the dyes or soiling in the lining papers will dissolve in the water and bleed onto the painting; 2) when the support silk has been abraded and become weak, causing fragments to interlock with the fibers of the lining papers, which makes it extremely difficult to remove the deteriorated lining without disturbing the painting; 3) when the support silk has worn away or flaked off to the degree that only the verso pigments remain stuck to the first lining.

Kansu

Hand scroll. Also known as makimono.

巻子

Karakami

唐紙

It originally means Chinese paper (see also Toshi). Later, the term began to be used to refer to the decorative paper which is applied to sliding doors (*fusuma*) and folding screens (*byobu*).

Karamekuri

空捲り

Dry peeling: a method of removing heavy or multiple linings from paintings using scalpel and tweezers and sometimes moist finger tips to roll and lift fibers. This method is commonly used for paintings with thick pigment and/or large areas of gold leaf (screens, doors, wall paintings), though it can be applied to paintings with little or no pigment on silk or paper where the adhesive has weakened and the lining can be carefully peeled away.

Katanori

Thick paste.

堅糊

Kawamataginu

Outer reinforcement silk. See Uwamakiginu.

川俣絹

Kindei

金泥

Gold powder or dust mixed with animal hide glue to form a paint.

Kinpaku

金箔

Gold leaf. Thin sheets of gold leaf applied to the painting support. In the Momoyama and Edo periods, it was common to have gold leaf grounds for sliding doors and screens. Gold leaf was often applied to the verso in paintings on silk.

Kire

Mounting fabric.

裂

Kiri 桐 Paulownia. *Paulownia tomentosa*. This straight-grained, even-textured, smooth wood is extremely light weight and well-suited for making into storage boxes and chests. It acts as a temperature and humidity moderator and is used extensively for inner and outer boxes for scrolls.

Kiritachi

切り裁ち

Pre-cutting. See Tachiwake.

Kiritsugi 切り継ぎ This is the process of forming the hanging scroll by joining the various mounting fabrics and painting, which until now have been dealt with separately. The flat-dried painting is taken off the drying board, the margins used for pasting down (harishiro) are trimmed off, and the painting formed into a perfect rectangle. The same is done on the mounting fabrics: once taken off the drying board, their exact sizes, placement and cutting lines are fixed, and the pieces of material split. Usually, until this point, the upper-most and lower-most fabrics, the middle mounting fabric, the upper and lower borders of the painting, and the side borders, have been processed and lined as a single large piece, but for joining, they must be split into two, and in order to prevent fraying of the threads at the cut, a small amount of paste must be applied (norifuse, noridome). In order to balance the capacity of the various elements for expansion and contraction, they are pre-shrunk (chijimi). Either the fabrics are brushed with a small amount of water and dried, or a fold is made in the mounting fabric by bending it over the corner of the work board or the edge of a ruler. Pre-shrinking is particularly frequent for the side borders. Also known as tsukemawashi.

Kiritsugibake 切り継ぎ刷毛

Mounting assembly brush, made from the tail hairs of horse or from badger about 2.1 cm in length. The brush is approximately 15 cm wide. Since it is used to apply narrow widths of thick paste, the hairs are thinner and shorter than those of a standard paste brush and can hold a keen edge. Also known



as tsukemawashibake.

Kiritsugifutai

切り継ぎ風帯

Inset futai. See Warikomifutai.

Kozo

楮

Papermulberry. Broussonetia papyrifera × Broussonetia kajinoki (or Broussonetia monoica) a shrub of the mulberry family cultivated all over Honshu island. Over 90% of handmade Japanese paper (washi) uses kozo as an ingredient. Since the fibers are long, the surface of less-processed kozo paper can be somewhat rough.



Kuisakitsugi

喰い裂き継ぎ

Water cut joint or feathered joint. Sheets of paper are given frayed or feathered edges by drawing a wet, thin brush along a straight edge, marking it with a spatula and then pulling the paper apart along the wetted edge by loosening the fibers. A stack of papers thus cut is then staggered so the edges of all the sheets are slightly exposed in a stepped pile. Dilute paste is applied to the edges. Then the sheets are lifted one at a time and placed with one feathered edge overlapping that of the next sheet. The join is brushed with a *nadebake* and the joined sheets, now one continuous sheet, which can be rolled up. The join is flat unlike the straight-cut joins (*botsugi*), which has double thickness at the overlap.

M Makimono

巻物

Hand scrolls. Also known as kansu.

Makio

Wrapping cord. See Himo.

巻緒

Mameuki

豆浮き

Bean-size lifting: small bubbles where the support has separated from the first lining. See Noribanare.

Marubocho

丸包丁

Round knife. This rounded blade knife used to cut paper and fabric in straight lines is a common tool at many stages in the mounting process.

Mashiura(uchi)

Subsidiary lining of the painting and the mounting fabrics.

增裏(打)

Since the various fabrics and the painting support have different weights, thicknesses, and flexibilities, they will respond differently to changes in humidity and temperature and to handling. To maximize the uniformity of the mounting, when the single first lining is insufficient to adjust the various thicknesses and flexibilities, subsidiary paper lining(s) are generally necessary. This process is called applying the

subsidiary lining (mashiurauchi). For it, soft, flexible misu paper from the Yoshino area of Nara prefecture is used with liquid "aged paste" (furunori), which has matured over a period of about ten years. After the first lining is fully dried, pasted misu paper is laid in strips across the back of the fabric and then the smoothing brush used to smooth it on. Finally, to ensure strong contact by adding pressure, the back is pounded gently with the bristle ends of a beating brush (uchibake), which has a wide base and long (6.5 cm), strong bulrush (tsukumo) or hemp palm (shuro) bristles. Then, since the fibers on the surface of the subsidiary backing paper have been lifted due to the action of the beating brush, they must be smoothed down again with a smoothing brush (shurobake type nadebake) so they lie flat. Traces of the use of the beating brush remain as tiny hollows in the surface of the paper.

Mimiori 耳折 Folding over of the edge.

Minogami 美濃紙 *Mino* paper. Made in a variety of weights, the thinner papers are called usu *minogami*. Measurements are about 60.6 cm × 90.9 cm. These thin *kozo* paper are used for almost all the first linings (*hadaura*), because they are strong but flexible, well-formed sheets, naturally white and free from specks of extraneous matter. Although originally made in Mino city, Gifu prefecture, and similar papers are now made in paper villages all over Japan. It is a harder paper than *misu* paper and uda paper, and makes a characteristic rattle when it is shaken.

Misugami 美栖紙 Misu Paper. Varying from delicate, web-like tissues to heavy, bulky papers, these measure about 24 cm × 51.5 cm. Made in Yoshino-cho, Yoshino district of Nara prefecture. Calcium carbonate powder is mixed with the fibers during the sheet formation. Directly after forming the sheet, rather than being couched it is laid out on a wooden drying board with no pressure applied, resulting in soft and delicate kozo paper. Used mostly for the subsidiary linings (mashiura), it can also be used for the subsidiary overall lining (nakaura) and on occasion even for the first lining (hadaura).

Mitsumata 三椏 Edgeworthia chrysantha. This shrub, cultivated in warm areas, branches in units of three, each new three-pronged shoot bearing clusters of white flowers with yellow centers. The fibers of mitsumata bark are soft, absorbent, slightly lustrous, and shorter than those of kozo. Paper made from them is soft and pliable with a smooth surface.



Among the many types of *mitsumata* papers are calligraphy papers and bank notes.

Mizubake 水刷毛

Water brush. Made of 2.1 cm long deer hair taken in the summer, this brush is about 15 cm wide. With three to four times the amount of hair of a *kiritsugibake* (*tsukemawashibake*). This tightly bound brush has a thick mass of hairs fanning out. It holds a comparatively large amount of water and is used to add water when thinning paste or to dampen paper evenly.



Mizunori

Liquid or dilute paste

水糊

Mushiboshi

虫干し

Airing: a custom of seasonally airing objects and clothing, traditionally done after the rainy season ends, but now generally done in spring or fall when temperature and humidity are mild.

N Nadebake (Nazebake) 撫刷毛

Smoothing brush.

A) Made of 2.1 cm long sheep, deer hair etc., it is about 15 cm wide and used to gently smooth a lining in place.

B) Made of soft hemp palm (*shuro*) and coarser bulrush (*tsukumo*) fibers 6.6 cm long, the brush is 15 cm wide and effective for delicate to forceful through smoothing. These two kinds of brushes are used for



essentially the same purpose, and many workshops use only smoothing brush B. In these workshops the term *nadebake* refers only to hemp and bulrush fiber brushes. In workshops that used both, *nadebake* (Tokyo) and *noribake* (Kyoto) refers to only smoothing brush A, the other being known as a hemp brush (*shurobake*) or a *nadebake* (Kyoto).

Nagashizuki

流し漉き

A method of making paper whereby a mould is dipped into a vat of beaten fibers suspended in water along with a viscous formation aid (*neri*). The filled mould is lifted above the water and then swished back and forth or sideways, so excess sloshes off. Several dips form one sheet, which is transferred to a post of couched sheets. This Asian method of paper formation contrasts with *tamezuki* methods, where the mould is dipped only once for each sheet and each sheet is couched separately on felt. *Tamezuki* is commonly used in the West, but also known in the East.

Nakajiku

A component of a roller rod. See Jikugi.

中軸

Nakaura(uchi)

中裏(打)

Overall lining. Once the pieces have been assembled into a whole, the entire mounting is given a lining, which process is called the *nakaurauchi*. Generally the process of lining begins at the bottom edge and works to the top. Either *misu* paper or uda paper is pasted on the assembled units using "aged paste" (*furunori*) and a beating brush (*uchibake*) to ensure close adhesion. For small paintings, this middle lining is often left off.

Nikawa

Animal glue.

膠

Nori

Paste. See also Furunori and Shinnori.

糊

Noribake

糊刷毛

Paste brush. Made from trimmed horse hairs (or sheep or raccoon hairs etc.) of about 2.7 cm in length taken from the mane or tail, the brush is about 15 cm wide and used for applying paste, both liquid (*mizunori*) and thick (*katanori*). In the Kyoto area this brush is seen as a type of *tsukemawashibake* and a *shigokibake* is used for the same applications.



Noribanare

糊離れ

Separation at joins. When separation occurs at an overlap join in the mounting structure, such as between two fabrics or fabric and painting, it is called *noribanare* or *norihazure*. When the lining paper has separated from the fabric or painting, it is called *noriuki*.

Noribon

糊盆

Paste tray. A shallow tub made of Japanese cypress (hinoki or sawara), it is used to

hold the paste during work and can be round, oval or square.

Noribuse (Norifuse)

糊伏せ

Fray prevention with paste: paste applied to the cut edges of mounting fabrics to prevent fraying. Also known as *noridome*.

Noridome

Fray prevention with paste. See Noribuse (Norifuse).

糊止め

Norikoshi

糊漉し

Paste strainer. Similar to a regular sieve, *norikoshi* come in three grades: coarse (*morome*), medium (*jomijin*), and fine (*kinugoshi*). Strainers are used when kneading paste and when sieving out impurities from adhesives and dyes.

Noriuki

糊浮き

Lifting or separating. Separation of the lining paper from the fabric or painting. Small bubbles are called *Mameuki*.

O Ōdo

黄土

Ochre. Various yellow to light brown pigments derived from refined earth containing $% \left(1\right) =\left(1\right) \left(1$

iron oxides.

Oita

Work board. See Baita (Banita).

御板

Omoteuchi

表打ち

Temporary protection for painted surface. A protective lining pasted with dilute seaweed paste to the front of the painting in order to protect the image during the restoration process. Also known as *yojobari*.

Ore

折れ

Crease or crack in the painting caused by repeated rolling and unrolling of a scroll, especially when the lining are thick and/or heavy paste has been used. Creases tend to appear parallel to the roller. Treated with *orefuse*.

Oreate

Reinforcement paper strip for ore. See Orefuse.

折れ当て

Orefuse

折れ伏せ

Reinforcement paper strip for *ore*. The application of strips of thin reinforcement paper over the back of creases in the painting. These are put on after the first lining (*hadaura*) and a subsidiary lining (*mashiura*) have been applied. Also orebuse, oreate.

Orichijimi

See Chijimi.

折り縮み

R Raigo

来迎

Descent to save a soul. When a believer dies, *Amida* Buddha along with an entourage of lesser figures descends on clouds and transports the soul back to his paradise. *Raigozu* depicts this scene. At times a *Bosatsu*, such as *Jizo*, *Kannon* or *Seishi*, becomes the central figure in the act.

Rayon paper

レーヨンペーパー

Rayon paper refers to paper made from the partially synthetic fiber, rayon, and a synthetic binder. Some of these papers have chemical wood pulp mixed in. During the process of restoration, rayon paper is used for temporary facings and linings (*yojo*). In all cases its use is transient; rayon paper never forms a lining (*urauchi*) that will become part of the mounting. In the past, *yojo* papers were thin *mino* paper which is

uniform and nicely light weight, but today rayon paper is becoming a common substitute, for it has similar properties to *mino* paper, but is cheap, and conveniently sold in rolls that are easy to cut to the desired size. Papers and non-woven cloth (*fushokufu*) of other synthetic materials such as polypropylene and spun polyester are also used.

Rekkaginu

劣化絹

Artificially deteriorated silk. As a rule, the infills are made of the same material as the original painting supports. For silk infills, a new repair silk that duplicates the thread diameter and density of weave of the original support is used. In order to adjust the flexibility and tear-strength of the new silk to that of the original, the entire newly woven silk is exposed to gamma waves, electron beam radiation or ultraviolet rays. This artificially deteriorates the silk fiber (*rekkaginu*), making it slightly weaker than the naturally deteriorated support silk.

Rokusho

緑青

Malachite green. The term refers both to the pigment, $CuCo_3 \cdot Cu(OH)_2$, and to the colors it produces.

S Sanzenbonnikawa

三千本膠

Cow or horse hide glue.

Senjo

洗浄

Washing. A general term for using water to decrease soiling in a painting or old fabrics. Usually a painting is laid on blotter paper or synthetic temporary lining papers and sprayed with water. Soiling loosens from the painting and through capillary action is absorbed into the blotter paper or temporary lining.

Senryo

染料

Dye pigment. Paints derived from dyes, such as indigo and cochineal.

Shigokibake

しごき刷毛

Spreading brush. Made from sheep hair with some pig bristle to add pliancy (or made from badger hair), the hairs of the *shigokibake* are short, 1.5 - 2.0 cm in length. This brush is used to apply thick paste to lining papers and to knead paste while diluting it.



Shinnori

新糊

Fresh paste or paste. Pure wheat starch is called *shofu* and paste made from boiling the soaked wheat starch is known as *shinnori*. The highest grade *shofu*, a by-product of raw wheat gluten, is known as *jinjofu* or *ginjofu*. It is sold in moist lumps (*namajofu*) or purified as a white powder. *Shinnori* is made by cooking the wheat starch in water

for up to an hour. Since the paste is only usable for a few days at most, it is made only in small amounts for the work at hand. To use it, one passes it through a sieve, kneads it with a wide brush, and dilutes it with water to a suitable consistency. Also known as *jinnori*.

Shirobake

白刷毛

Made of goat hair, horse hair, etc. Used to hold down paper without moistening or using paste.



Shitabari

下張り

Under-papering for screens, etc. The wood lattice core of sliding doors, folding screens, standing screens, panels or drying boards is covered with seven to ten layers of *kozo* paper applied with paste in several ways. This *shitabari* creates a buffer for humidity and temperature changes that compensates for the difference in contraction and expansion rates between the inner wood structure and the outermost painting support. The *shitabari* serves as an under support not only for screens and panels, but also for wall and ceiling paintings.

Shitate

仕立て

Finishing. The upper rod is attached at the top and the lower roller at the bottom. Finally the decorative strips (*futai*) are sewn onto the upper rod, metal fittings (*kanagu*) are hammered in, and hanging and wrapping cords (*himo*) are attached.

Shu

Vermillion, cinnabar. Mineral pigment derived from red mercuric sulfide (HgS).

朱

Shurobake

Hemp palm brush. See Nadebake.

棕櫚刷毛

Soberi 総縁 Outer border. The outer framing fabric that surrounds a painting mounted in *Bunjin hyogu* or *Butsuga hyogu* style, where it encloses the *chumawashi*. The *soberi* includes *joge* (*kamishimo* or *tenchi*) at the top and bottom and *hashira* running vertically along both sides.

Soko

装潢

Mounting. In the eighth century, the term *soko* was used to refer those who dyed papers and joined them to mount sutra scrolls. It has come to mean the entire process of mounting.

Sotobako

外箱

Outer storage box. Made of paulownia. It is often lacquered to avoid dust collection. The *sotobako* encloses the inner box containing the scroll, the two together mitigating atmospheric changes and thereby protecting the scroll. See also Hozonbako.

Soura(uchi)

総裏(打)

Final lining. This backing completes the back side of the hanging scroll. It must be smoothly finished to facilitate rolling and unrolling many times. *Uda* paper is affixed with a beating brush, and then smoothed carefully with a smoothing brush. On the upper edge of what will be the outer side when the scroll is rolled up, a silk rectangle that serves as a protective covering (*uramakiginu*) is attached, and similar strengtheners (*jikudasuke*, *shiten*) to reinforce the lower roller (*jiku*) are added at both sides of the lower edge. Before adding this final backing, the right and left edges are folded under in a process known as folding the ears (*mimiori*), to form a hem of about 2 mm wide and then pasted down.

Sugi

杉

Japanese Cedar, *Cryptomeria japonica*. Used for the lattice core of the drying board and of screens as well as for chests, the Japanese cedar wood is light weight, soft, and straight grained. The resin leaves a brownish luster, while the white areas are essentially free from sap. These white portions are used to make lattice cores. The fragrance of the wood serves to discourage mold growth and insect infestation.

Suibokuga

水墨画

Ink painting: a style of ink painting based on modulation of dark and light shades of *sumi*. Developed in Tang and Song China, this technique first came to Japan in the Kamakura period, after which it became quite popular. It is associated with Zen Buddhism.

Suji 筋 Edge fabric: narrow strips of lined silk attached between paintings and mounting fabric.

Sumi

墨

Chinese ink, made from different kind of soot mixed with animal hide glue and kneaded into a thick paste. This is then placed in molds to form sticks that harden as they are dried and aged. The *sumi* can be re-liquefied at need by rubbing the stick with a small amount of water on an ink stone (*suzuri*).

T Tachiwake

裁ち分け

Pre-cutting: cutting the mounting fabrics to the requisite size in preparation for assembling the mounting.

Tenchi

天地

Upper and lower sections of the hanging scroll mounting. Also known as *joge* or *kamishimo*.

Tokonoma

床の間

Display alcove: a slightly raised area of a room set back from the main space and reserved for displaying works of art and flowers. Generally a hanging scroll decorates

the far wall.

Toriawase

Deciding on the mounting fabrics

取り合せ

Toshi

唐紙

Chinese paper: a thin, off-white, short-fiber paper. *Toshi* was made originally in China of such materials as bamboo, straw and inner bark fibers. Imitative papers are made in Japan, some recycled from the Chinese originals, some from pulp imported from China, and others with approximately equivalent Japanese materials. <u>See also Karakami</u>.

Tsukemawashi

Assembling the mounting. See Kiritsugi.

付け廻し

Tsukemawashibake

Mounting assembly brush. See Kiritsugibake.

付け廻し刷毛

Tsuyu

露

Ornamental threads on *futai*. Small tassel-like additions sewn close to the bottom of the *futai*, they may be of various colors and shapes.

Uchibake

打刷毛

Beating brush, made of hemp palm or bulrush fibers 6.9 cm long, this thick brush, about 5.4 cm thick, is approximately 15 cm wide, and used for meshing the fibers of subsidiary linings and final backings once they are put in place. After the lining paper is brushed with aged paste and smoothed into place, its surface is beaten with the bristle ends of the beating brush so as to assure strong adhesion.



Uchibako

内箱

Inner storage box, made of untreated paulownia wood. It holds the scroll and is placed in an outer storage box. See also Hozonbako.

Uchiwake

打ち分け

Matched lining: a method of bringing out the image by re-lining the painting with paper of a different color from the previous time, but matched to the colors of the painting. This technique is equivalent in inpainting. Only toning, no inpainting, is done for matching the brightness of the new silk infill with that of the original silk.

Udagami

宇陀紙

Uda paper. *Uda* paper is heavier and has a harder finish. Measurements: 31.8 cm × 45.5 cm. Made in Yoshino-cho, Yoshino district of Nara prefecture. It is a *kozo* paper

with a smooth surface and dense, firm structure. When forming the sheets, powdered natural limestone is mixed in. The sheets are couched before being brushed out on wooden drying boards. Primarily used for final backings (*soura*) to lend a certain density to the mounting, but for large mountings *uda* paper can also be used for the subsidiary overall lining (*nakaura*) to strengthen the structure.

Ukebari

Pouch pasting. See Fukurobari.

浮け張り

Ukekake Pou

Pouch pasting. See Fukurobari.

浮け掛け

Uraenogu

裏絵具

Verso painting: An old and very important method of subtly enhancing the colors on the surface of a painting by applying pigment to the back side of the silk support. Also

known as urazaishiki.

Uramakiginu

裏巻絹

Outer reinforcement silk. See Uwamakiginu.

Urauchi

The application of a lining or the lining itself.

裏打ち

Urazaishiki

Verso painting. See Uraenogu.

裏彩色

Urazuri

裏摺り

Rubbing with beads to soften and smooth a scroll by rolling the beads over the back or the final backing (*soura*) after it has been stretch dried, before the reverse drying.

See also Juzu.

Usaginikawa

Rabbit skin glue

東膠

Usuminogami

Thin *mino* paper

薄美濃紙

Uwamakiginu

上巻絹

Outer reinforcement silk: a sheer plain weave silk attached along the back of the upper part of the mounting. Also known as *uramakiginu*. It faces out when the scroll is rolled up. This cloth provides reinforcement and a protective layer to the back of the mounting. The textile used for the *uwamakiginu*, as well as for the *jikudasuke* and *hasso* ends, is generally a thin plain weave silk dyed an unobtrusive color, like light blue or light brown. Since these cloths are woven in the Kawamata area or

Fukushima prefecture, they are sometimes called *kawamataginu*, *fukushimaginu* or simply *fukushima*.

W Warikomifutai

割り込み風帯

Inset *futai*. *Futai* that do not hang free, but are incorporated into the upper section of the mounting. The lined fabric for the ten is split vertically, roughly into thirds. The two *futai* strips are then inset between these thirds using paste and often edging silk (*kosuji*). These five pieces of fabric are joined into one and then attached as a unit to the upper part of the *chuberi*, completing the assembly of the mounting. Also known as *kiritsugifutai*.

Washi

和紙

Handmade Japanese paper. <u>See also Gampi, Kozo, Minogami, Misugami, Mitsumata,</u>

Nagashizuki, and Udagami.

Y Yamatohyogu

大和表具

Yamato mounting: a style of mounting and fundamental format for secular as well as

some religious paintings.

Yasha

ヤシャ (矢車)

 $Alnus\ firma$: a member of the deciduous alder tree family bearing small cones. Used

for dyeing shades of yellow to brown.

Yojobari

養生張り

Temporary protection for paint surface. See Omoteuchi.

International Course on Conservation of Japanese Paper 2019

国際研修「紙の保存と修復」2019

発 行 日 令和3年3月31日

発 行 独立行政法人国立文化財機構

東京文化財研究所

監修加藤雅人編集・校閲五木田まきは

International Course on Conservation of Japanese Paper 2019

Copyright / published by

Tokyo National Research Institute for Cultural Properties Independent Administrative Institution National Institutes for Cultural Heritage

13-43 Ueno Park, Taito-ku, Tokyo 110-8713, Japan

TEL: +81-(0)3-3823-4921 FAX: +81-(0)3-3823-4867

Published on 31st March 2021

Editorial supervised by KATO Masato

Edited and revised by GOKITA Makiha